FORM PTO-1390 ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE JANS-0028 TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known see 37 C.F.R 1.5) DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US) CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371 INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE 28 June 1999 PCT/EP00/05677 20 June 2000 TITLE OF INVENTION RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US Frans Eduard JANSSENS, et al. Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information: This is a FIRST submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371. 2. This is a **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371. $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ 3. This express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)) at any time rather than delay examination until the expiration of the applicable time limit set in 35 U.S.C. 371(b) and PCT Articles 22 and 39(1). 4. A proper Demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date. X 5. <u>X</u> A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)). is transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau). **b.** X has been transmitted by the International Bureau. is not required, as the application was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US) 6. A translation of the International Application into English (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)). Y ne k 7 <u>X</u> Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)) are transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau). أيق have been transmitted by the International Bureau. b. __ 1 have not been made; however, the time limit for making such amendments has NOT expired. T d. $\underline{\mathbf{X}}$ have not been made and will not be made. 18 8. A translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U S.C. 371(c)(3)). 9. An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4). <u>X</u> 10. A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)). Items 11. to 16. below concern other document(s) or information included: 11. __ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. 12. _ An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3 28 and 3.31 is included. 13. X A FIRST preliminary amendment. A SECOND or SUBSEQUENT preliminary amendment. 14. _ A substitute specification. 15. _ A change of power of attorney and/or address letter. 16. <u>X</u> Other items or information: - A copy of the Published PCT Application by WIPO under No. WO 01/00615, including the search report. - A copy of the International Preliminary Examination Report. - Associate Power of Attorney.

EXPRESS MAIL Mailing Label No. EL 899364561 US Date of Deposit: 27 December 2001

EL899364561US

U.S. APPLICATION NO MITTION 15 F R. 1 5) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/EP00/05677			ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER JANS-0028		
17 The following fees are submitted: Basic National Fee (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1) - (5)): Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) nor international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO and International Search Report not prepared by the EPO or JPO\$1,040.00				CALCULATIONS	PTO USE ONLY
International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482 not paid to USPTO but International Search Report has been prepared by the EPO or JPO\$890.00					
International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to USPTO but international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO\$740.00					
International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) but all claims did not satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4)\$710.00					
International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4)\$100.00					
ENTER APPROPRIATE BASIC FEE AMOUNT =				\$ 890.00	
Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later that _20 _30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).				\$	
Claims	Number Filed	Number Extra	Rate		
Total claims	29- 20 =	9	X \$18.00	\$ 162.00	
independent Claims	1-3=	0	x \$84.00	\$	
Multiple dependent claims(s) (if applicable) + \$280.00				\$ 280.00	
TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =				\$1,332.00	
Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27. The fees indicated above are reduced by ½.				\$	
SUBTOTAL =				\$1,332.00	
Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later the _20 _30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)). +				\$	
TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =				\$1,332.00	
Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00 per property +				<u></u>	
TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =				\$1,332.00	
				Amount to be: refunded	\$
<u> </u>				charged	\$
a. X A check in the amount of \$ 1,332.00 to cover the above fee is enclosed.					
b Please charge my Deposit Account No. 23-3050 in the amount of \$ to cover the above fees. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.					
c. X The Commissioner if hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 23-3050. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.					
NOTE: Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the application to pending status.					
SEND ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO: SIGNATURE				.a Chor	:
Diane B. Elderkin Woodcock Washburn LLP One Liberty Place - 46 th Floor Philadelphia, PA 19103 (215) 568-3100 Mendy A. Choi NAME NAME 36,697 REGISTRATION NUM				(RED	

531 Rec'd PCT/7. 27 DEC 2001

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re patent application of:

Frans Eduard Janssens et al.

5 Intl. Appln. No. :

PCT/EP00/05677

Group No.

: Not Yet Assigned

Intl. Filing Date:

20 June 2000

Examiner

: Not Yet Assigned

For

Respiratory Syncytial Virus Replication Inhibitors

10

BOX PCT

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Dear Sir: 15

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Prior to action on the merits, applicants request that the above-identified application be amended.

20

In the claims:

Please amend claims 1-15 as follows:

1. A compound of formula 25

$$Q \xrightarrow{R^1} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{4} a^{3} \qquad (I)$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula

$$(a-1);$$

30

-N=CH-CH=CH-

(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-

(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-

(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-

(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di(C_{1-4} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR 5a R 5b , =CH $_2$, =CH-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

wherein

10

15

20

Alk is C_{1-6} alkanediyl;

 Y^1 is a bivalent radical of formula $-NR^2$ - or $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced

10

15

20

by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, arylC₁₋₆alkylthio, arylcarbonyl, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino and aryl;

R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle selected from quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, pyridopyridyl, naphthiridinyl, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, 3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, 2,3-dihydro-1,4-dioxino[2,3-b]pyridyl or a radical of formula

$$(CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_{2})_{p} \qquad (CH_$$

and said bicyclic heterocycles may optionally be substituted in either of the two cycles with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10

15

25

30

each m independently is 1 or 2;

each p independently is 1 or 2;

each R^2 independently is hydrogen, formyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-5} alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

 R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, and C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

- 20 2. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- is a radical of formula (a-1), (a-2) or (a-3).
 - 3. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-5) wherein v is 2 and v1 is -NR²-.
 - 4. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with NHR⁶.
 - 5. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein G is a direct bond or C₁.

 10alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from

10

15

20

25

30

hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, C_{1-6} alkyloxy $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -.

6. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein the compound is (\pm) -N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[1-(8-quinolinyl)ethyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-(2-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(ethoxy-8quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3Himidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-4)]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-\text{amino}-3-\text{b})]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1Hbenzimidazol-2-yl]-1,3-propanediamine trihydrochloride monohydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-1)]$ aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-$ 4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-[1-(aminomethyl)-2-methylpropyl]-4$ piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-

10

15

20

25

piperidinyl]-1-(1-isoquinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride.trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8tetrahydro-2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8quinolinylmethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3Himidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride tetrahydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2$ aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(1-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

7. (amended) A method of using as a medicine a compound as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 6.

- 8. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 6.
- 9. (amended) A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 8, comprising the step of intimately mixing said carrier with said compound.
 - 10. An intermediate of formula

$$P - Q_1 - N - A_1 - A_2 - A_3 - A_4 - A_3 - A_4 - A_3 - A_4 - A_4 - A_4 - A_4 - A_4 - A_5 - A_$$

with R¹, G and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, P being a protective group, and Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 but being devoided of the R² or R⁶ substituent.

11. An intermediate of formula

$$(O \longrightarrow)Q_3 \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^1 \longrightarrow a^2$$

$$A \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow A$$

$$A \longrightarrow A$$

with R¹, G and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, and (O=)Q₃ being a carbonyl derivative of Q, said Q being defined according to claim 1, provided that it is devoided of the NR²R⁴ or NR² substituent.

12. An intermediate of formula

$$Q \xrightarrow{R^{1}} Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} A^{2} A^{3}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} A^{N$$

with R^1 , Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and $(O=)G_2$ being a carbonyl derivative of G, said G being defined according to claim 1.

- 5 13. (amended) A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 1, comprising at least one step selected from the group consisting of:
 - a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)

- with R^1 , G, Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and W_1 being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;
 - b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)

10

15

$$P - Q_1 -$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{1} A^{2} A^{3}$$

$$(IV-a) \qquad (I-a) \qquad (I-a)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$ being defined as Q_1 provided that Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group;

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

10

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

$$P = Q_{1'}(OP) \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N & a^{1 \choose 3} \\ (VII) \end{pmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} (I-a-2) \\ M & a^{1 \choose 3} \\ (VIII) \end{pmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ (I-a-2) \\ M & a^{1 \choose 3} \\ (VIII) \end{pmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ (I-a-1-1) \\ (I-a-1-1) \end{pmatrix}$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, H- Q_1 (OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, H_2N - Q_2 (OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

(O=)Q₃
$$\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^4}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a^1}{$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)

NC-Q₄

$$\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{A^4}{\bigvee}}_{a^3}$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)

(X-a) (I-a-1-3-1) with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, and R^1 being

10

15

defined as R¹ according to claim 1 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

i) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H_2N -CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} - C_{-CH_2} - Q_1 - Q_1$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $H-C(=O)-Q_1$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is formyl;

1) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A_{3}^{1} + R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} A_{3}^{2a} + R^{$$

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, and R^{2a}-NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R² is other than hydrogen and is

15

represented by R^{2a} , R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

$$R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} a^{2} \xrightarrow{reduction} (R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} a^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{1}} a^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{2}} (XV)$$

$$(I-c-1)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and $(R^6)_2N$ -[(C_1 . $_9alkyl$)CH $_2$ OH]-NH-HQ $_5$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1} \longrightarrow$$

5

10

15

with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w, R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)₂ and R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)₃ being defined as R¹ according to claim 1 provided that R¹ is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} \longrightarrow C_{-Alk} \longrightarrow R^{2}R^{4}N \longrightarrow$$

with R^1 , G, $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ -, Alk, X^1 R^2 and R^4 defined as in claim 1, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)

$$H = C + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + NR^4 + Q_6 N + CH_2 + C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} + Q_6 N + CH_2 + Q_6 N + Q_6 N$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and Q_6N - CH_2 - C_{1-3} alkyl- NR^4 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that in the definition of Q, X^2 is C_{2-4} alkyl- NR^4 , in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

10

15

q) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXI)

$$P = O = G_1$$

$$Q = M$$

with R^1 , Q, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and HO- G_1 being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy or HO- $(CH_2CH_2O$ - $)_n$; and

r) reducing an intermediate of formula (XXII)

$$Q = \bigvee_{N = a^{1} = a^{2} = a^{2}}^{R^{1}} \qquad \text{reduction}$$

$$Q = \bigvee_{N = a^{1} = a^{2} = a^{2}$$

with R^1 , Q, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H-G₂-OH being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy substituent carries also at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent.

- 14. (amended) A product, comprising:
 - (a) a first compound as claimed in claim 1; and
 - (b) a second antiviral compound,

wherein said first compound and said second compound are simultaneously, separately or sequentially used in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.

15. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising:

- (a) a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier; and
- (b) as active ingredients:
 - i. a first compound as claimed in claim 1; and
 - ii. a second antiviral compound.

10

15

20

Please add the following new claims:

- 16. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid.
- 17. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with alkali.
- 18.(new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting the acid addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free base by treatment with alkali.
- 19. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting the base addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free acid by treatment with acid.

REMARKS

Applicants submit that the amendment to the claims does not introduce new matter and are fully supported by the specification and claims as originally filed. Applicants submit that the present claims meet all the requirements for patentability. The Examiner is respectfully requested to allow all the present claims. If the Examiner is of a contrary view, the Examiner is requested to contact the undersigned attorney at (215) 557-3861.

Attached hereto is a marked-up version of the changes made to the specification and the claims by the current amendment. The attached page is captioned "Version with Markings to Show Changes Made."

Respectfully submitted,

15

10

5

Glendy a Chor Wendy A. Choi

Registration No. 36,697

20

WOODCOCK WASHBURN LLP One Liberty Place - 46th Floor

25 Philadelphia, PA 19103

Telephone:

(215) 568-3100

Facsimile

(215) 568-3439

VERSION WITH MARKINGS TO SHOW CHANGES MADE

In the claims:

5

1. A compound of formula

$$Q \xrightarrow{R^1} a^1 = a^2$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{A^2 = a^3} (I)$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof wherein $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - represents a bivalent radical of formula

10

15

$$(a-2);$$

$$(a-3);$$

$$(a-4)$$
; or

$$(a-5);$$

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di(C_{1-4} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula

20

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

wherein

Alk is C_{1-6} alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula –NR²- or –CH(NR²R⁴)-;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, aryl C_{1-6} alkylthio, arylcarbonyl, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino and aryl;

R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle selected from quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, pyridopyridyl, naphthiridinyl, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, 3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, 2,3-dihydro-1,4-dioxino[2,3-b]pyridyl or a radical of formula

15

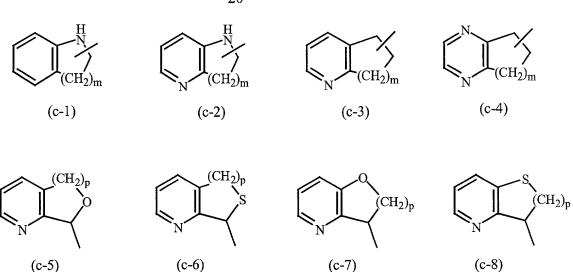
20

10

10

15

20



and said bicyclic heterocycles may optionally be substituted in either of the two cycles with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆ 6alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl, aryl-6alkyl, a 6alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋ 6alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂ $O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(- CH_2 - CH_2 - $O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino(- CH_2 - CH_2 - $O)_n$ -; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4; each m independently is 1 or 2;

each p independently is 1 or 2;

each R² independently is hydrogen, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

 R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy; R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;

R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or

20

5

R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

- 2. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- is a radical of formula (a-1), (a-2) or (a-3).
 - 3. (amended) A compound according to claim 1 [or 2], wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-5) wherein v is 2 and Y¹ is -NR²-.
 - 4. (amended) A compound according to [anyone of claims 1 to 3] <u>claim 1</u>, wherein R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with NHR⁶.
 - 5. (amended) A compound according to [anyone of claims 1 to 4] <u>claim 1</u>, wherein G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-.
- 6. (amended) A compound according to claim 1, wherein the compound is [selected from]
 (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[1-(8-quinolinyl)ethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-

10

15

20

25

30

1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-4)]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(ethoxy-8quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H$ imidazo [4,5-b] pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-4)]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-4)]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1Hbenzimidazol-2-yl]-1,3-propanediamine trihydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-[1-(aminomethyl)-2-methylpropyl]-4$ piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-(1-isoquinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-4)]$ methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H$ benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride.trihydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8tetrahydro-2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8quinolinylmethyl]-*IH*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-*IH*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-*IH*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-*IH*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride tetrahydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(1-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

15

25

5

- 7. (amended) [A compound] A method of using as a medicine a compound as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 6 [for use as a medicine].
- 8. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as [described] <u>claimed</u> in any one of claims 1 to 6.
 - 9. (amended) A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 8, [characterized in that,] comprising the step of intimately mixing said carrier with said compound [a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as described in any one of claims 1 to 8].
 - 10. An intermediate of formula

$$P - Q_1 - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \\ a^3 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (IV)

with R^1 , G and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, P being a protective group, and Q_1 being defined as Q according to claim 1 but being devoided of the R^2 or R^6 substituent.

5 11. An intermediate of formula

$$(O \longrightarrow)Q_3 \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^1 \longrightarrow a^2$$

$$A \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow A$$

$$A \longrightarrow A$$

with R^1 , G and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $(O=)Q_3$ being a carbonyl derivative of Q, said Q being defined according to claim 1, provided that it is devoided of the NR^2R^4 or NR^2 substituent.

12. An intermediate of formula

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} a^{4} a^{3}$$
(XXII)

with R^1 , Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $(O=)G_2$ being a carbonyl derivative of G, said G being defined according to claim 1.

13. (amended) A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 1, [characterized by,] comprising at least one step selected from the group consisting of:

10

10

a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)

with R^1 , G, Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and W_1 being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)

$$P \longrightarrow Q_1 \longrightarrow$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^{1} \longrightarrow a^{2} \longrightarrow H \longrightarrow Q_{1} \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^{1} \longrightarrow a^{2} \longrightarrow (I-a)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, Q_{1a}(CH=CH) being defined as Q₁ provided that Q₁ comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group;

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

5

10

10

15

$$P = Q_{1'}(OP) = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\ & &$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, H₂N-Q₂·(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

$$(O \Longrightarrow) Q_3 \xrightarrow{R^1} a^2$$
 amination
$$H_2 N \longrightarrow Q_3 H \xrightarrow{N} a^4 = a^3$$

$$(IX)$$

$$(I-a-1-2)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)

10

15

NC-Q₄

$$\stackrel{A}{=}$$
 $\stackrel{A}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A}{=$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)

(X-a) (I-a-1-3-1) with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, and R^1 being defined as R^1 according to claim 1 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N - CH_2 -CHOH- CH_2 - Q_4 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a CH_2 -CHOH- CH_2 - NH_2 moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia

$$C_{1-4}\text{alkyl} - C_{1-4}\text{alkyl} - C_{1-4}\text{a$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $H-C(=O)-Q_1$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is formyl;

 amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)

(O=)Q₅
$$\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{a_4 = a_3}{}}$$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{a_4 = a_3}{}}$ + $\stackrel{A^{2a}}{\underset{A^{2a} = NH}{}}$ $\stackrel{A = a_1}{\underset{A^2}{}}$ (XIII) (XIV)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and R^{2a} -NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by R^{2a} , R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \cap (R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \cap (R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and $(R^6)_2N$ -[($C_{1-9}alkyl$)CH₂OH]-NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by $C_{1-10}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen

10

15

atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)

$$P = Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{6}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{6}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w, R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)₂ and R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)₃ being defined as R¹ according to claim 1 provided that R¹ is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-

10

15

CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} \longrightarrow C_{-Alk} \longrightarrow R^{2}R^{4}N \longrightarrow$$

with R^1 , G, $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ -, Alk, X^1 R^2 and R^4 defined as in claim 1, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)

$$H = C + C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl} + NR^4 +$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and Q_6N - CH_2 - C_{1-3} alkyl- NR^4 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that in the definition of Q, X^2 is C_{2-4} alkyl- NR^4 , in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

q) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXI)

with R^1 , Q, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and HO- G_1 being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy or HO- $(CH_2CH_2O_1)_n$; and

r) reducing an intermediate of formula (XXII)

10

$$Q = \bigvee_{N = a^{1} = a^{2} = a^{2}}^{R^{1}} \qquad \text{reduction}$$

$$Q = \bigvee_{N = a^{1} = a^{2} = a^{2}$$

with R^1 , Q, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H-G₂-OH being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy substituent carries also at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent.

[and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I) into each other following art-known transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of formula (I), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the free base by treatment with alkali, or converting the base addition salt into the free acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or N-oxide forms thereof.]

- 15 14. (amended) A product [containing], comprising:
 - (c) <u>a first</u> compound as [defined] $\underline{\text{claimed}}$ in claim 1; and
 - (d) <u>a second</u> [another] antiviral compound, [as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections]

wherein said first compound and said second compound are simultaneously, separately or sequentially used in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.

- 15. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising:
 - (a) a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier; and
- 25 (b) as active ingredients:

15

20

- i. a first compound as [defined] claimed in claim 1; and
- ii. [another] a second antiviral compound.
- 5 Please add the following new claims:
 - 17. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid.
 - 17. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with alkali.
 - 18.(new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting the acid addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free base by treatment with alkali.
 - 19. (new) The process of claim 13, further comprising the step of converting the base addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free acid by treatment with acid.

WO 01/00615

-1-

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

- The present invention is concerned with benzimidazoles and imidazopyridines having antiviral activity, in particular, they have an inhibitory activity on the replication of the respiratory syncytial virus. It further concerns their preparation and compositions comprising them, as well as their use as a medicine.
- Human RSV or Respiratory Syncytial Virus is a large RNA virus, member of the family of Paramyxoviridae, subfamily pneumovirinae together with bovine RSV virus. Human RSV is responsible for a spectrum of respiratory tract diseases in people of all ages throughout the world. It is the major cause of lower respiratory tract illness during infancy and childhood. Over half of all infants encounter RSV in their first year of life, and almost all within their first two years. The infection in young children can cause lung damage that persists for years and may contribute to chronic lung disease in later life (chronic wheezing, asthma). Older children and adults often suffer from a (bad) common cold upon RSV infection. In old age, susceptibility again increases, and RSV has been implicated in a number of outbreaks of pneumonia in the aged resulting in significant mortality.

Infection with a virus from a given subgroup does not protect against a subsequent infection with an RSV isolate from the same subgroup in the following winter season. Re-infection with RSV is thus common, despite the existence of only two subtypes, A and B.

Today only three drugs have been approved for use against RSV infection. Ribavirin, a nucleoside analogue, provides an aerosol treatment for serious RSV infection in hospitalized children. The aerosol route of administration, the toxicity (risk of teratogenicity), the cost and the highly variable efficacy limit its use. The other two drugs, RespiGam[®] and palivizumab, polyclonal and monoclonal antibody immunostimulants, are intended to be used in a preventive way.

Other attempts to develop a safe and effective RSV vaccine have all met with failure thus far. Inactivated vaccines failed to protect against disease, and in fact in some cases enhanced disease during subsequent infection. Life attenuated vaccines have been tried with limited success. Clearly there is a need for an efficacious non-toxic and easy to administer drug against RSV replication.

25

20

25

5

EP-A-0,005,318, EP-A-0,099,139, EP-A-0,145,037, EP-A-0,144,101, EP-A-0,151,826, EP-A-0,151,824, EP-A-0,232,937, EP-A-0,295,742, EP 0,297,661, EP-A-0,307,014, WO 92 01697 describe benzimidazole and imidazopyridine substituted piperidine and piperazine derivatives as antihistaminics, antiallergics or serotonine antagonists.

Thus, the present invention concerns the compounds of formula (I)

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ A \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \\ A \end{bmatrix}$$
 (I)

their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-

(a-1):

-N=CH-CH=CH-

(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-

(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-

(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-

radical of formula

(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, polyhalo $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, carboxyl, amino $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, mono- or $di(C_{1\text{-}4}$ alkyl) amino $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, or a

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

$$R^2$$
—N—Alk— X^1 — R^2 —N—C(=O)—Alk— X^1 — R^2 —N—(b-1) (b-2) (b-3) (b-4)

10

15

20

$$Y^1$$
 $CH-X^1$ Y^1 $CH-X^1$ Y^1 $CH-X^2$ $CH-X^2$ $CH-X^2$ $(b-5)$ $(b-6)$ $(b-7)$ $(b-8)$

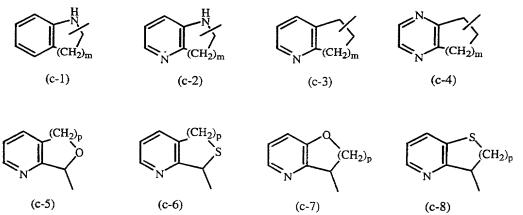
wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula $-NR^2$ - or $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -; X¹ is NR^4 , S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂; X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, aryl C_{1-6} alkylthio, arylcarbonyl, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino and aryl;

R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle selected from quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, pyridopyridyl, naphthiridinyl, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, 3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, 2,3-dihydro-1,4-dioxino[2,3-b]pyridyl or a radical of formula



and said bicyclic heterocycles may optionally be substituted in either of the two cycles with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, aryl, aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, mono-or di $(C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl)-

- amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- each m independently is 1 or 2; each p independently is 1 or 2; each R^2 independently is hydrogen, formyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth
- substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy; R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy; R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;

 $R^{5a},\,R^{5b},\,R^{5c}$ and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl;$ or

- 20 R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;
 - R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;
- aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

The term prodrug as used throughout this text means the pharmacologically acceptable derivatives, e.g. esters and amides, such that the resulting biotransformation product of the derivative is the active drug as defined in the compounds of formula (I). The reference by Goodman and Gilman (The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 8th ed., McGraw-Hill, Int. Ed. 1992, "Biotransformation of Drugs", p. 13-15) describing prodrugs generally, is hereby incorporated.

As used herein C₁₋₃alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 3 carbon atoms such as methyl, ethyl,

15

20

25

30

propyl, 1-methylethyl and the like; C1-4alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as the group defined for C₁₋₃alkyl and butyl and the like; C₂₋₄alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 4 carbon atoms such as ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl, butyl and the like; C₁₋₆alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₄alkyl and pentyl, hexyl, 2-methylbutyl and the like; C₁₋₉alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 9 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₆alkyl and heptyl, octyl, nonyl, 2-methylhexyl, 2-methylheptyl and the like; C₁₋₁₀alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₉alkyl and decyl, 2-methylnonyl and the like. C₃₋₇cycloalkyl is generic to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl; C₂₋₅alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 5 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl, 1,2-propanediyl, 2,3-butanediyl, 1,5pentanediyl and the like, C₂₋₅alkanediyl is substituted on C₁₋₁₀alkyl as provided for in the definition of R², it is meant to be substituted on one carbon atom thus forming a spiro moiety; C_{1.4}alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as, for example, methylene, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl and the like; C₁₋₆alkanediyl is meant to include C_{1.4}alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 5 to 6 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,5-pentanediyl, 1,6-hexanediyl and the like; C_{1-10} alkanediyl is meant to include C_{1-6} alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 7 to 10 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,7-heptanediyl, 1,8-octanediyl, 1,9-nonanediyl, 1,10-decanediyl and the like.

As used herein before, the term (=O) forms a carbonyl moiety when attached to a carbon atom, a sulfoxide moiety when attached to a sulfur atom and a sulfonyl moiety when two of said terms are attached to a sulfur atom. The term (=N-OH) forms a hydroxylimine moiety when attached to a carbon atom.

The term halo is generic to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo. As used in the foregoing and hereinafter, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl as a group or part of a group is defined as mono- or polyhalosubstituted C₁₋₆alkyl, in particular methyl with one or more fluoro atoms, for example, difluoromethyl or trifluoromethyl. In case more than one halogen atoms are

· 10

15

20

25

attached to an alkyl group within the definition of polyhaloC₁₋₄alkyl, they may be the same or different.

As described hereinabove, R¹ defines a bicyclic heterocycle which may optionally be substituted. The substituents may be divided over both rings or they may be attached to one and the same ring.

When any variable (e.g. aryl, R²,R³, R⁴, R^{5a}, R^{5b} etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent, each definition is independent.

It will be appreciated that some of the compounds of formula (I) and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms may contain one or more centers of chirality and exist as stereochemically isomeric forms.

The term "stereochemically isomeric forms" as used hereinbefore defines all the possible stereoisomeric forms which the compounds of formula (I), and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines or physiologically functional derivatives may possess. Unless otherwise mentioned or indicated, the chemical designation of compounds denotes the mixture of all possible stereochemically isomeric forms, said mixtures containing all diastereomers and enantiomers of the basic molecular structure as well as each of the individual isomeric forms of formula (I) and their prodrugs, N-oxides, salts, solvates or quaternary amines substantially free, i.e. associated with less than 10%, preferably less than 5%, in particular less than 2% and most preferably less than 1% of the other isomers. Stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) are obviously intended to be embraced within the scope of this invention. As used hereinafter the terms trans or cis are well-known by the person skilled in the art.

For therapeutic use, salts of the compounds of formula (I) are those wherein the counterion is pharmaceutically acceptable. However, salts of acids and bases which are non-pharmaceutically acceptable may also find use, for example, in the preparation or purification of a pharmaceutically acceptable compound. All salts, whether pharmaceutically acceptable or not are included within the ambit of the present invention.

The pharmaceutically acceptable acid and base addition salts as mentioned hereinabove are meant to comprise the therapeutically active non-toxic acid and base addition salt forms which the compounds of formula (I) are able to form. The pharmaceutically

20

5

acceptable acid addition salts can conveniently be obtained by treating the base form with such appropriate acid. Appropriate acids comprise, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrohalic acids, e.g. hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, sulfuric, nitric, phosphoric and the like acids; or organic acids such as, for example, acetic, propanoic, hydroxyacetic, lactic, pyruvic, oxalic (i.e. ethanedioic), malonic, succinic (i.e. butanedioic acid), maleic, fumaric, malic (i.e. hydroxybutanedioic acid), tartaric, citric, methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, benzenesulfonic, p-toluenesulfonic, cyclamic, salicylic, p-aminosalicylic, pamoic and the like acids.

10 Conversely said salt forms can be converted by treatment with an appropriate base into the free base form.

The compounds of formula (I) containing an acidic proton may also be converted into their non-toxic metal or amine addition salt forms by treatment with appropriate organic and inorganic bases. Appropriate base salt forms comprise, for example, the ammonium salts, the alkali and earth alkaline metal salts, e.g. the lithium, sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium salts and the like, salts with organic bases, e.g. the benzathine, *N*-methyl-D-glucamine, hydrabamine salts, and salts with amino acids such as, for example, arginine, lysine and the like.

The term addition salt as used hereinabove also comprises the solvates which the compounds of formula (I) as well as the salts thereof, are able to form. Such solvates are for example hydrates, alcoholates and the like.

The term "quaternary amine" as used hereinbefore defines the quaternary ammonium salts which the compounds of formula (I) are able to form by reaction between a basic nitrogen of a compound of formula (I) and an appropriate quaternizing agent, such as, for example, an optionally substituted alkylhalide, arylhalide or arylalkylhalide, e.g. methyliodide or benzyliodide. Other reactants with good leaving groups may also be used, such as alkyl trifluoromethanesulfonates, alkyl methanesulfonates, and alkyl ptoluenesulfonates. A quaternary amine has a positively charged nitrogen. Pharmaceutically acceptable counterions include chloro, bromo, iodo, trifluoroacetate and acetate. The counterion of choice can be introduced using ion exchange resins.

It will be appreciated that the compounds of formula (I) may have metal binding, chelating, complexating properties and therefore may exist as metal complexes or metal chelates. Such metalated derivatives of the compounds of formula (I) are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

Some of the compounds of formula (I) may also exist in their tautomeric form. Such forms although not explicitly indicated in the above formula are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

A special group of com pounds are those compounds of formula (I) wherein one or more of the following restrictions apply:

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) or (b-8);
- X² is a direct bond, CH₂ or C(=O);
- R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle selected from quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, pyridopyridyl, naphthiridinyl, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, 3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, or a radical of formula

$$(CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_$$

- and said bicyclic heterocycles may optionally be substituted in either of the two cycles with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxy-C₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)-amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino,
 C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- each m independently is 1 or 2; each p independently is 1 or 2;
 - each R² independently is hydrogen, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with NHR⁶, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with NHR⁶ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy.

 C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-5} alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

- R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;
- R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl.

Another special group of compounds are those compounds wherein $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ is a radical of formula (a-1), (a-2) or (a-3).

Yet another special group of compounds are those compounds wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-5) wherein v is 2, and Y¹ is -NR²-.

Also interesting compounds are those compounds wherein R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with NHR⁶.

- Other interesting compounds are those compounds wherein G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl optionally substituted with one two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-.
- 20 Preferred compounds are:
 - (\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[1-(8-quinolinyl)ethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
- 25 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinyl-methyl]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
 - $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl)-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl]-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-methylbutyl-4-me$
- 30 yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(ethoxy-8-quinolinylmethyl)-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- 35 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;
 - (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;

-10-

- (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-*1H*-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- 5 *N*-[1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1,3-propanediamine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
 - (\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate;
 - (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo-
- 10 [4,5-b]pyridine-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-[1-(aminomethyl)-2-methylpropyl]-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
- (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(1-isoquinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
 N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
 the prodrugs, the N-oxides, the addition salts, the quaternary amines, the metal
- 20 complexes and the stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

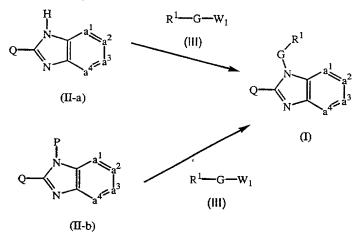
Most preferred compounds are:

- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine;
- 25 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride.trihydrate;
 - (\pm) -N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2,3-dimethyl-5-
- 30 quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate;
 - (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinyl-methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- 35 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate;

20

(\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;

- (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo-[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride tetrahydrate;
- 5 (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-2-amine;
 - (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(1-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; the prodrugs, the *N*-oxides, the addition salts, the quaternary amines, the metal
 - the prodrugs, the *N*-oxides, the addition salts, the quaternary amines, the metal complexes and the stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.
 - In general, compounds of formula (I) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b), wherein P represents a protecting group, such as, for example C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991), with an intermediate of formula (III), wherein W₁ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, e.g. sodium hydride. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide.



Compounds of formula (I) wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q₁, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein P represents a protecting group, for example C₁.

4alkyloxycarbonyl, benzyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of

'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991).

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ N & & & \\ & & &$$

When P represents, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, said deprotection reaction can
be performed by, for example, acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such
as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of
said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for
example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of
water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol,
2-propanol, 1-butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is

- 2-propanol, 1-butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to heat the reaction mixture, in particular up to the reflux temperature. Alternatively, when P represents, for example, benzyl, the deprotection reaction can be performed by catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of hydrogen and an appropriate catalyst in a reaction-inert solvent. A suitable catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, and the like. An appropriate reaction-inert solvent for said reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, an ester, e.g. ethylacetate and the like, an acid, e.g. acetic acid and the like.
- The catalytic hydrogenation reaction described above can also be used to prepare a compound of formula (I-a) by deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein Q₁ comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q₁ being represented by Q_{1a}(CH=CH), and said intermediate being represented by formula (IV-a).

P—Q_{1a}(CH=CH)
$$A_{1}$$
 A_{2} A_{3} A_{4} A_{4} A_{3} A_{4} A_{4} A_{4} A_{5} A_{7} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3} A_{4} A_{5} A_{5} A_{7} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3} A_{4} A_{5} A_{5}

Compounds of formula (I) wherein, in the definition of Q, both R⁶ substituents are hydrogen or R² and R⁴ are both hydrogen, said Q being represented by H₂N-Q₂, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-1), can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V).

5

Said deprotection reaction can be performed in the presence of a suitable base such as, for example hydrazine, or in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol, acetic acid and the like.

Compounds of formula (I-a-1) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI) according to the procedure described for the preparation of compounds of formula (I-a).

$$P = Q_{2} - Q_{2} - Q_{2} - Q_{2} - Q_{2} - Q_{2} - Q_{3} - Q_{4} - Q_{3} - Q_{4} - Q_{5} -$$

Compounds of formula (I-a) or (I-a-1), wherein Q₁ or Q₂ comprise a hydroxy substituent, said Q₁ or Q₂ being represented by Q₁·(OH) or Q₂·(OH), and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-2) or (I-a-1-1), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII) as described hereinabove for the preparation of compounds of formula (I-a).

$$P = Q_{1} \cdot (OP) \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} & & & \\ &$$

10

15

20

25

 Compounds of formula (I) wherein, in the definition of Q, both R⁶ substituents are hydrogen or R² and R⁴ are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R⁶, or R² and R⁴ substituents contains at least one hydrogen, said Q being represented by H₂N-Q₃H, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-1-2) can also be obtained by reductive amination of intermediates of formula (IX) in the presence of a suitable amination reagent, such as, for example, ammonia, hydroxylamine, or benzylamine, and in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst. An appropriate catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, rhodium-on-Al₂O₃, and the like, optionally in the presence of a catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

(O=)Q₃
$$\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$$
 amination $\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$ $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$ $\stackrel{A^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$ (I-a-1-2)

Compounds of formula (I), wherein Q comprises a -CH₂NH₂ moiety, said Q being represented by H₂N-CH₂-Q₄, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-1-3) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (X).

NC-Q₄

$$\stackrel{A_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_2}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\bigvee}}} \stackrel{a_1}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}{\underset{a_4}$$

Said reduction can be performed with a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride or hydrogen, optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as Raney Nickel. A suitable solvent for the above reaction is, for example, tetrahydrofuran, or a solution of ammonia in an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Said reduction reaction performed in a solution of ammonia in an alcohol can also be used to prepare compounds of formula (I-a-1-3), wherein R^1 is substituted with C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, said R^1 being represented by $R^{1'}$ - C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-1-3-1) starting from an intermediate of formula (X-a).

15

20

5

NC-Q₄

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{1!} - C_{1-6}alkyl - OH \\
NC-Q_4
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{1!} - C_{1-6}alkyloxyC_{1-6}alkyl \\
R^{1!} - C_{1-6}alkyl \\
R^{1!} - C_{1-6}alkyl$$

Compounds of formula (I), wherein Q comprises a $-CH_2$ -CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, said Q being represented by H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-1-3-2), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XI) with ammonia in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol.

$$CH_2 - Q_4$$
 N
 A_1
 A_2
 A_3
 A_4
 A_3
 A_4
 A_3
 A_4
 A_4
 A_3
 A_4
 A_4

Compounds of formula (I), wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or one R⁶ substituent is formyl, said Q being represented by H-C(=O)-Q₁, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia.

Compounds of formula (I), wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 is other than hydrogen, said R^2 being represented by R^{2a} , R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q being represented by R^{2a} -NH-HQ₅, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-c), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) with an intermediate of formula (XIV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

10

15

20

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} a^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{1}} a^{2} + R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} A^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{$$

Compounds of formula (I-c), wherein R^{2a} represents C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, said R^{2a} being represented by $[(C_{1-9}alkyl)CH_2OH]-N(R^6)_2$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-c-1), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

$$(R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$C(=O)OC_{1}-4alkyl$$

$$(XV)$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{2}$$

$$R^{3}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$R^{5}$$

$$R^{6}$$

$$R^{7}$$

$$R$$

Compounds of formula (I) wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q₁, and wherein R^1 is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with 1 or more substituents selected from hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, said substituents being represented by formula A-OH, said R^1 being represented by R^{1a} -(A-OH)_w, with w being the amount of substituents on R^{1a} ranging from 1 to 4, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-d), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Alternatively, one protecting group may also protect more than one substituent of R^{1a} , said protecting group being represented by P_1 , as represented by formula (XVI-a). The two ways of protecting the substituents of R^{1a} , i.e. with a separate, as in formula (XVI), or a combined, as in formula (XVI-a), protecting group, may also be combined in the same intermediate, as represented by formula (XVI-b).

$$P = Q_{1}$$

$$R^{1a}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$R^{1a}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{6}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{6}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{2}$$

$$Q_{3}$$

$$Q_{4}$$

$$Q_{5}$$

$$Q_{7}$$

Compounds of formula (I), wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-2), said compounds

being represented by formula (I-e), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of
formula (XVII) with an intermediate of formula (XVIII) in the presence of sodium
cyanide and a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol and the
like.

$$C_{1\text{-4alkyl}} = O - C - Alk - X^{1} - N - Alk - X^{1} - N - Alk - X^{1} - Alk - X^$$

Compounds of formula (I), wherein in the definition of Q, X² is C₂₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, said Q being represented by Q₆N-CH₂-C₁₋₃alkyl-NR⁴, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-p), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XIX) with an intermediate of formula (XX) in the presence of isopropyl titanate (IV) and a suitable

reducing agent, such as NaBH₃CN, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride and an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

$$H = C + C_{1-3}alkyl + NR^4 + NR^4 + Q_6N + CH_2 + C_{1-3}alkyl + NR^4 + NR^4 + Q_6N + CH_2 + C_{1-3}alkyl + NR^4 + Q_6N + CH_2 + C_{1-3}alkyl + NR^4 + Q_6N + CH_2 + Q_6N + CH_2 + Q_6N + CH_2 + Q_6N + CH_2 + Q_6N + Q_$$

Compounds of formula (I-p), wherein R^2 is C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl, and Q is a radical of formula (b-6), wherein Y^1 is NR^2 , said compounds being represented by formula (I-p-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XIX) with an intermediate of formula (XX-a) according to the procedure described for the preparation of a compound of formula (I-p).

(l-p-1)

Compounds of formula (I), wherein G is substituted with hydroxy or HO(-CH₂CH₂O)_n-, said G being represented by G₁-OH, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-q), may be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXI), wherein P represents a suitable protecting group, for example, benzyl. Said deprotection reaction can be performed by catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of hydrogen and an appropriate catalyst in a reaction-inert solvent. A suitable catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, and the like. An appropriate reaction-inert solvent for said reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, an ester, e.g. ethylacetate and the like, an acid, e.g. acetic acid and the like.

5

P-O-
$$G_1$$

N A_1
 A_2
 A_3

(XXI)

Compounds of formula (I), wherein G is substituted with hydroxy and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy substituent carries also at least one hydrogen, said G being represented by H-G₂-OH, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-q-1), can also be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XXII).

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ O = \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q \\ Q \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q \\$$

Said reduction reaction can be performed in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as, for example sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol or tetrahydrofuran or a mixture thereof. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

Compounds of formula (I) may be converted into each other following art-known functional group transformation reactions, comprising those described hereinafter.

15 The compounds of formula (I) may be converted to the corresponding N-oxide forms following art-known procedures for converting a trivalent nitrogen into its N-oxide form. Said N-oxidation reaction may generally be carried out by reacting the starting material of formula (I) with an appropriate organic or inorganic peroxide. Appropriate inorganic peroxides comprise; for example, hydrogen peroxide, alkali metal or earth 20 alkaline metal peroxides, e.g. sodium peroxide, potassium peroxide; appropriate organic peroxides may comprise peroxy acids such as, for example, benzenecarboperoxoic acid or halo substituted benzenecarboperoxoic acid, e.g. 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid, peroxoalkanoic acids, e.g. peroxoacetic acid, alkylhydroperoxides, e.g. t.butyl hydro-peroxide. Suitable solvents are, for example, water, lower alcohols, e.g. 25 ethanol and the like, hydrocarbons, e.g. toluene, ketones, e.g. 2-butanone, halogenated hydrocarbons, e.g. dichloromethane, and mixtures of such solvents.

10

15

20

Compounds of formula (I), wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, said R¹ being represented by R¹-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-f), can be prepared by esterification of a compound of formula (I-g) in the presence of a suitable alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, pentanol, hexanol and the like, and in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like.

Q
$$= \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=O)OH \\ G \\ Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=O)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ G \\ Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=O)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C(=$$

Compounds of formula (I-a) may be converted into compounds of formula (I) wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is other than hydrogen, said R^2 or R^6 being represented by Z_1 , said Q being represented by Z_1 - Q_1 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I-h), by reaction with a reagent of formula (XXIII), wherein W_2 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, or 4-methylbenzenesulphonate, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example disodium carbonate, dipotassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide and the like, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, acetonitrile, N,N-dimethylformamide.

$$H \leftarrow Q_1 \xrightarrow{R^1} a^{\frac{1}{2}} a^{\frac{1}{2}} + Z_1 \leftarrow W_2 \xrightarrow{\qquad \qquad } Z_1 \leftarrow Q_1 \xrightarrow{\qquad \qquad } A^{\frac{1}{2}} a^{\frac{1}{2}} a^{\frac{1}{2}}$$
(I-a) (XXIII) (I-h)

Compounds of formula (I-h), wherein, in the definition of Z₁, R² is CH₂-C₁₋₉alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, said compounds being represented by formula (I-h-1), can also be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a) wherein, in the definition of H-Q₁, R² is hydrogen, said H-Q₁ being represented by H-Q_{1b}, and said compounds being represented by formula (I-a-3), with an intermediate of formula (XXIV), in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

10

15

20

Compounds of formula (I-h), wherein Z_1 comprises formyl, $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl or $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, said Z_1 being represented by Z_{1a} , and said compounds being represented by formula (I-h-2), can be converted into compounds of formula (I-a), by acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol, sec. butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to work at elevated temperatures.

$$Z_{1a} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{1a} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{1b} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{1b} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{1b} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{1b} = Q_{1}$$

$$X_{$$

Compounds of formula (I-b) can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a) with formic acid.

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with hydroxy, said R^1 being represented by HO- R^1 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I-i), can be prepared by deprotecting a compound of formula (I-j), wherein R^1 is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, said $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl being represented by Z_2 , and said R^1 being represented by Z_2 - C_1 - C_2 . Said deprotection can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as, for

15

example methylene chloride, in the presence of a suitable deprotecting agent, e.g. tribromoborane.

Q
$$A_1$$
 deprotection A_1 A_2 A_3 A_4 A_3 A_4 A_4 A_3 A_4 A_4 A_4 A_5 A_4 A_5 A_4 A_5 A

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n, said compounds being represented by formula (I-k), can be converted into compounds of formula (I-l-1) or (I-l-2) by reaction with an appropriate amine of formula (XXV) or (XXVI) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$(C_{1}-6alkyl)N(-CH_{2}-CH_{2}-O)_{n} R^{1'}$$

$$(C_{1}-6alkyl)N(-CH_{2}-CH_{2}-O)_{n} R^{1'}$$

$$(I-k)$$

$$(I-k)$$

$$(C_{1}-6alkyl)N(-CH_{2}-CH_{2}-O)_{n} R^{1'}$$

$$(I-l-1)$$

$$(C_{1}-6alkyl)_{2}N(-CH_{2}-CH_{2}-O)_{n} R^{1'}$$

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with halo, said compounds being represented by formula (I-m) can be converted into compounds of formula (I) by reaction with 1-butanethiol in the presence of palladium-on-charcoal and CaO in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

Q
$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A & A & A \\ A & A & A \end{bmatrix}$$
(I-m)
$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} A & A & A \\ A & A & A \end{bmatrix}$$
(I)

15

20

25

5

Compounds of formula (I) wherein a hydrogen atom in the radicals of formula (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) or (a-5) is replaced by nitro, said compounds being represented by formula (I-n) may be reduced to a compound of formula (I-o) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as platinum-on-charcoal, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, e.g. a thiophene solution. The reaction may be performed in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

In the following paragraphs, there are described several methods of preparing the intermediates in the foregoing preparations. A number of intermediates and starting materials are commercially available or are known compounds which may be prepared according to conventional reaction procedures generally known in the art or analogous to the procedures described in EP-A-0005318, EP-A-0099139, EP-A-0151824, EP-A-0151826, EP-A-0232937, EP-A-0295742, EP-A-0297661, EP-A-0539420, EP-A-0539421, US 4,634,704, US 4,695,569.

In the foregoing and the following preparations, the reaction mixture is worked up following art-known methods and the reaction product is isolated and, if necessary, further purified.

Intermediates of formula (III) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVII) with a suitable leaving group, i.e. W₁, introducing agent, e.g. 1-halo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrachloromethane.

$$V_1$$
 V_2
 V_3
 V_4
 V_4

Intermediates of formula (XXVII), wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with chloro, said R¹ being represented by Cl-R¹ and said intermediates being represented by formula (XXVII-a) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVIII),

5

10

15

20

wherein (O=)R^{1b}H is defined as a carbonyl derivative of R^{1'} wherein one carbon or nitrogen, adjacent to the carbonyl, carries at least one hydrogen, with phosphorus oxychloride. Intermediates of formula (XXVIII) may also react as their enol tautomeric forms.

$$(O=)R^{1b}H - G - H \xrightarrow{POCl_3} Cl - R^{1'} - G - H$$
(XXVIII) (XXVII-a)

Intermediates of formula (XXVII), wherein R¹ is 2-trifluoromethyl-3-methyl (3*H*)-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine, and G is CH₂, said intermediates being represented by formula (XXVII-b), can be prepared by reacting N-2,6-dimethyl-2,3-pyridinediamine (Heterocycles, 38, p 529, 1994), with trifluoroacetic acid.

$$CF_3$$
-COOH
$$CH_2 \longrightarrow NH_2$$

$$CF_3$$
-COOH
$$CH_2 \longrightarrow N$$

$$(XXVII-b)$$

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein W_1 is chloro, which is attached to a carbon atom carrying at least one hydrogen, said G being represented by G_3H , and said intermediates being represented by formula (III-a) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXIX) with thionylchloride in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylenechloride.

$$R^1$$
— G_3H — OH

$$SOCI_2$$
 R^1 — G_3H — CI

$$(XXIX)$$

$$(III-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (XXIX) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XXX) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride.

$$R^1$$
— G_3 (=O) \longrightarrow R^1 — G_3 H—OH (XXX) (XXIX)

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXIX) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXXI), wherein P is a suitable protecting group, e.g. C₁₋₄alkylcarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydroxide.

(IIXXXI)

5

10

15

20

$$R^{1} - G_{3}H - O - P \longrightarrow R^{1} - G_{3}H - OH$$
(XXXI) (XXIX)

Intermediates of formula (XXX), wherein $G_3(=0)$ is CH(=0), said intermediates being represented by formula (XXX-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXII), wherein W_3 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, with N_1N_2 -dimethylformamide in the presence of butyllithium in a reaction-inert

solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, diethylether or a mixture thereof. $R^{1} - W_{3} - R^{1} - CH(=0)$

Intermediates of formula (XXX-a) can also be prepared by oxidizing an intermediate of formula R¹-CH₂-OH in the presence of a suitable oxidizing agent, e.g. MnO₂ in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylenechloride.

(XXX-a)

$$R^1$$
— CH_2 — OH R^1 — $CH(=O)$ (XXX-a)

Intermediates of formula R¹-CH₂-OH, wherein R¹ is 2,3-dimethylquinoxaline, said intermediates being represented by formula (XCI) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XCII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. potassium borohydride in the presence of lithium chloride.

Intermediates of formula (XCII) can be prepared by reacting ethyl 2,3-diaminobenzoate (Tetrahydron, 28, 3271, 1972) with 2,3-butanedione in the presence of disodium disulfite.

10

15

Intermediates of formula (XXXI), wherein R^1 is 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinoline, which can optionally be substituted, G_3H is CH_2 , and P is C_{1-4} alkylcarbonyl, said intermediates being represented by formula (XXXI-a) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XCIII) with C_{1-4} alkylacid anhydride at elevated temperatures in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydroxide.

(XCIII) CH₃

$$C_{1-4}alkyl$$

$$C_{1-4}alkyl$$

$$C_{1-4}alkyl$$

$$C_{1-4}alkyl$$

$$C_{1-4}alkyl$$

Intermediates of formula (XCIII) can be prepared by oxidizing an intermediate of formula (XCIV) with a suitable oxidizing agent, e.g. a peroxide such as 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylene chloride.

Intermediates of formula (XCIV) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XCV) (Org. Prep. Proced. Int., 23, p 386-387, 1991) with an appropriate reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium-on-charcoal, and a suitable acid, e.g. trifluoroacetic acid.

Intermediates of formula (IV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIII-a) or (XXXIII-b), wherein P represents a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, with an intermediate of formula (III) according to the reaction described for the general preparation of compounds of formula (I).

10

$$P = Q_{1} \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} A_{1} & A_{2} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{4} & A_{3} & A_{4} & A_{4}$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIII-a) with an intermediate of formula (XXXIV) that has reacted with methanesulfonyl chloride, in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide.

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by a cyclization reaction of an intermediate of formula (XXXV) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol or N,N-dimethylformamide, in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur.

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$, and said intermediates by formula (IV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVI) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate.

10

$$P = Q_{1a}(CH=CH) = \begin{pmatrix} & & & & \\ & &$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein, in the definition of Q_1 , the X^1 or X^2 moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_1 being represented by Q_{1c} -NH, and said intermediates by formula (IV-b), may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an intermediate of formula (XXXVIII).

halo
$$= \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$
 + P $= Q_{1c} - NH_2$ P $= Q_{1c} - NH$ (XXXVIII) (IV-b)

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with amino or mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, said R¹ being represented by R^{5a}R^{5b}N-R¹, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described above, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-c), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIX) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XL), in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, e.g. palladium, and (R)-(+)-2,2'-bis(diphenyl-phosphino)-1,1'-binaphtyl, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

halo
$$R^{1}$$
 R^{5a}
 R^{5a}

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle substituted with C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described above, said R¹ being represented by R^{5a}R^{5b}N-C(=O)-R¹, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-d), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIX) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XL), under an atmosphere of carbon monoxide, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium (II) acetate, and

10

15

20

1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

halo
$$\mathbb{R}^{1'}$$
 \mathbb{R}^{5a}
 \mathbb{R}^{5a}

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein P-Q₁ comprises C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with NR⁶-P, said C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl being represented by Z_3 , said P-Q₁ being represented by P-NR⁶-Z₃-Q_{1b}, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (XLI), wherein W₄ represents a suitable leaving group, such as p-toluenesulphonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} a^{2} + P \xrightarrow{R^{6}} Z_{3} - W_{4} \longrightarrow P \xrightarrow{R^{6}} Z_{3} - Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N} a^{1} a^{2}$$

$$(I-a-3) \qquad (XLI) \qquad (IV-e)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV-e), wherein R⁶ is hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLII) with an intermediate of formula (XLIII) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

$$Q = Q = Q_{1b} = Q_$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII-a) or (XXXIII-b) can be prepared by protecting an intermediate of formula (XLIV) with a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, in the presence of a suitable

10

15

reagent, e.g. di C₁₋₄alkyl dicarbonate and optionally in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium acetate.

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXXIII-a) or (XXXIII-b) can be converted into an intermediate of formula (XLIV) by reaction with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid and the like or mixtures thereof, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII-a) or (XXXIII-b), wherein in the definition of Q_1 , the X^1 or X^2 moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_1 being represented by Q_{1c} -NH, and said intermediates by formula (XXXIII-a-1) or (XXXIII-b-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b), wherein W_5 represents a suitable leaving group, such as for example a halo atom, e.g. chloro, with an intermediate of formula (XLVI).

$$W_{5} \xrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}} P \xrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}} (XLV-b) (XLVI) (XXXIII-b-1)$$

Intermediates of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVII-a) or (XLVII-b) with $H_2P(=0)(W_5)_3$ in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

$$O = \bigvee_{H}^{H} \bigvee_{a^{4} = a^{3}}^{a^{1}} \qquad H_{2}P(=O)(W_{5})_{3} \qquad \bigvee_{N}^{H} \bigvee_{a^{4} = a^{3}}^{A^{1}} \qquad (XLV-a)$$

$$O = \bigvee_{H}^{P} \bigvee_{a^{4} = a^{3}}^{A^{2}} \qquad H_{2}P(=O)(W_{5})_{3} \qquad \bigvee_{N}^{P} \bigvee_{a^{4} = a^{3}}^{A^{1}} \bigvee_{a^{4} = a^{3}}^{A^{2}} \qquad (XLV-b)$$

Intermediates of formula (XLVII-a) or (XLVII-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVIII-a) or (XLVIII-b) with an intermediate of formula (IL).

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII-a) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVIII-a) with P-Q₁-C(=NH)-O-CH₂-CH₃ in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

Intermediates of formula (XXXV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (L) with an intermediate of formula P-Q₁=C=S, which is synthesized according to the procedures described in EP 0005318, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. ethanol. To increase the reaction rate, the reaction may be performed at elevated temperatures.

10

15

$$R^{1}$$
 G HN A^{1} A^{2} A^{2} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} A^{3} A^{2} A^{3} $A^{$

Intermediates of formula (L) can be obtained by reducing an intermediate of formula (LI) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst, e.g. Raney Nickel.

Intermediates of formula (LII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with an intermediate of formula (LIII), in which W_6 represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro. This reaction may be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$R^{1}$$
— G — NH_{2} + W_{6} — A_{1} — A_{2} A_{3}

(LII) (LII) (LII)

Intermediates of formula (LII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LIV) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

$$R^{1}$$
— G — N
 C = O
 R^{1} — G — NH_{2}
 (LIV)

Intermediates of formula (LIV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (III) with NaN[C(=O)H]₂.

15

20

$$R^{1}$$
— G — W_{1} + NaN[C(=O)H]₂ \longrightarrow R^{1} — G — N C =O (LIV)

Intermediates of formula (LI) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LIII) with an intermediate of formula (LV) (J. Org. Chem., 25, p 1138, 1960) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide, in the presence of an appropriate base, e.g. sodium hydride.

$$R^{1} - G - NH - C - H + O_{2}N \qquad (LIII)$$

$$R^{1} - G - HN \qquad a^{1} \qquad a^{2} \qquad O_{2}N \qquad a^{4} \qquad a^{3} \qquad (LI)$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXVI) can be prepared by dehydrating an intermediate of formula (LVI) with a suitable acid, such as sulfuric acid.

$$P = Q_{1a}(CH_2-CHOH) = Q_{1a}(CH=CH) = Q_{1$$

Intermediates of formula (LVI) wherein, in the definition of Q_{1a}, the X¹ or X² moieties are CH₂, said Q_{1a} being represented by Q_{1a'}, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVI-a), can be prepared by reacting a carbonyl moiety of formula (LVII) with an intermediate of formula (LVIII) in the presence of N,N-diisopropylamine and butyl lithium, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH_2-C=O) + CH_3 \longrightarrow P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH_2-CHOH) \longrightarrow CH_2 \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow a^{\frac{1}{2}} \stackrel{a^2}{\longrightarrow} a^{\frac{1}{2}}$$
(LVII)
(LVIII)
(LVIII)

Intermediates of formula (IV), wherein G is C_{1-10} alkanediyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, HO(-CH₂CH₂O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂CH₂O)_n-, or aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂CH₂O)_n-, said group of substituents being represented by O-Z₄, said G being represented by Z₄-O-G₁, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-f), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIII-a), with an intermediate of formula (LIX), optionally in the presence of a suitable acid, such as p-toluenesulfonic acid and the like, and optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent,

15

20

such as *N*,*N*-dimethylacetamide. To increase the reaction rate, the reaction may be carried out at elevated temperatures.

Intermediates of formula (LIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LX) with a reagent of formula (LXI) or (LXII) in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, or toluene, in the presence of an acid, e.g. 4-methylbenzenesulphonic acid.

$$Z_4$$
-O-H (LXI) or
$$R^1 \longrightarrow G_1(=O)$$

$$(LX)$$

$$Z_4 \longrightarrow O \longrightarrow CH \longrightarrow C_{1-4}alkyl \qquad (LXII)$$

$$Z_4 \longrightarrow O \longrightarrow CH \longrightarrow C_{1-4}alkyl \qquad (LXII)$$

Intermediates of formula (LX) can be prepared by oxidizing an intermediate of formula (LXIII) with a suitable oxidizing agent, e.g. MnO₂, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride.

$$R^{1}$$
— G_{1} H—OH R^{1} — G_{1} (=O) (LX)

Intermediates of formula (IV-f) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein G is C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl substituted with hydroxy, said G being represented by G₁-OH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-g), with an intermediate of formula (LXIV), wherein W₇ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. iodo, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$P = Q_{1}$$

$$| V =$$

Intermediates of formula (IV-g), wherein the carbon atom of G_1 carrying the hydroxy, also carries a hydrogen atom, said G_1 -OH being represented by H- G_2 -OH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-g-1), can be prepared by reducing an

5

intermediate of formula (LXV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, tetrahydrofuran or a mixture thereof. Intermediates of formula (LXV) can also first be deprotected, e.g. in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, resulting in intermediates of formula (LXVI), followed by a reduction, resulting in a compound of formula (I-q-1) wherein Q represents H-Q₁, said compounds being represented by formula (I-q-1-1).

Intermediates of formula (IV), wherein G is ethyl substituted with hydroxy, said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-g-2) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIII-a) with an intermediate of formula (LXVII) in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide.

$$P = Q_{1} + Q_{1} +$$

A subgroup of intermediates of formula (IV-g-2), represented by formula (IV-g-2-1), can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXVIII) with an

10

intermediate of formula (LXIX) in the presence of 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. toluene.

Intermediates of formula (LXV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIII-a) with an intermediate of formula (LXX), wherein W₈ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide.

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} R \\ Q_{2} = O \end{pmatrix} - W_{8}$$

$$(LXX)$$

$$(LXX)$$

$$(LXV)$$

$$(LXV)$$

Intermediates of formula (V) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXI) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethyl azodicarboxylate.

$$O(1) = O(1) =$$

Intermediates of formula (V) may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXII) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and a suitable solvent, such as *N*, *N*-dimethylformamide.

10

Intermediates of formula (LXXII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXIII), wherein W_9 represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as N, N -diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

$$HO-Q_{2} \xrightarrow[N]{} \stackrel{a^{1}}{\underset{a^{4}}{=}} \stackrel{a^{2}}{\underset{a^{3}}{=}} + Q \xrightarrow[C_{1}-4alkyl]{} 0 \xrightarrow[C_{1}-4alkyl]{} 0$$

Intermediates of formula (V), wherein in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl, said Q_2 being represented by C_{1-10} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates by formula (V-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LXXIV), wherein W_{10} is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, such as acetonitrile.

$$H = Q_{1b} = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N = A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} N - C_{1-10} & \text{alky} \\ N = C_{1-10} & \text{alky} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N = A^2 \\ A^2 \\ N = A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N = A^2 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ N = A^2 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \\ N = A^3 A^3 \\ N =$$

10

15

20

Intermediates of formula (LXXI) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, also carries two hydrogen atoms, said HO- Q_2 being represented by HO- CH_2 - Q_2 , and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXXI-a), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXXV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$C_{1\text{-}4}\text{alkyl--}O-C(=O) - Q_2 - N - A_2 - A_3$$

$$(LXXV) \qquad \text{reduction} \qquad HO-CH_2 - Q_2 - N - A_3 - A_4 - A_3$$

$$(LXXI-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (LXXI), wherein, in the definition of Q₂, the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also at least one hydrogen, said HO-Q₂ being represented by HO-Q₃H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXXI-b), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (IX) with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

$$(O=)Q_3$$
 (IX)
 $(O=)Q_3$
 (IX)
 $(O=)Q_3$
 (IX)
 $(O=)Q_3$
 $(O=$

Intermediates of formula (VI) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(P)_2$ and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 substituent carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q_2 being represented by $(P)_2N-C_{1-10}$ alkyl-NH- Q_{2a} H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (VI-a), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (LXXVI) with an intermediate of formula (LXXVII) in the presence of a suitable reductive agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable solvent in this reaction is a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

10

15

$$(O=)Q_{2\overline{a}} \underbrace{ \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} \\ N \end{pmatrix}_{a}^{a_{1}^{1}} = \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} \\ Q \\ N \end{pmatrix}_{a_{1}^{2}}^{a_{1}^{1}} + P_{P} \underbrace{ \begin{pmatrix} N-C_{1-10}alkyl-NH_{2} \\ N \end{pmatrix}_{a_{1}^{2}}^{P} = \begin{pmatrix} N-C_{1-10}alkyl-NH_{2} \\ N \end{pmatrix}_$$

Intermediates of formula (LXXVI) can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXXVIII) in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \end{array}$$

Intermediates of formula (IX) may be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXXIX) in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid and the like.

Intermediates of formula (LXXIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXX) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

Intermediates of formula (LXXX) wherein, in the definition of Q_3 , the X^1 or X^2 moiety of the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_3 being represented by Q_3 -NH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXXX-a), may be prepared by cyclizing an intermediate of formula (LXXXI) in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

10

15

Intermediates of formula (LXXXI) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXXXII) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a mixture of ammonia in alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & &$$

Intermediates of formula (LXXXII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXXIII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXXIV) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. ethanol.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{S=C=N} \\ \text{O}_{Q_3-\text{NH}_2} \\ \text{(LXXXIII)} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{O}_{Q_3} \\ \text{O}_{Q_1} \\ \text{O}_{Q_2} \\ \text{O}_{Q_3} \\ \text{O}_{Q_$$

Intermediates of formula (IX), wherein, in the definition of Q_3 , R^2 comprises C_{1-10} alkyl, said Q_3 being represented by C_{1-10} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (IX-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXXV), wherein (O=) C_{1-10} alkyl represents a carbonyl derivative of C_{1-10} alkyl and wherein W_{11} is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

10

Intermediates of formula (X) wherein Q_4 comprises C_{1-9} alkyl, said Q_4 being represented by C_{1-9} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (X-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXXVI) wherein W_{12} represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate and the like.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{R^1} A_{3}^{1} + W_{12}-C_{1}-9alkyl-CN \longrightarrow NC-C_{1}-9alkyl-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N} A_{3}^{1} A_{3}^{1}$$

$$(LXXXVI) \qquad (X-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (X), wherein NC-Q₄ represents NC-(C₁₋₉alkyl)(R⁴)N-C(=O)-Alk-X¹, said intermediates being represented by formula (X-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXXVII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXXVIII) in the presence of di-1H-imidazol-2-yl-methanone, a suitable base, such as N, N-diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

HO-C-Alk-X¹

$$(LXXXVIII)$$

$$(LXXXVIII)$$

$$(LXXXVIII)$$

$$R^{4}$$

$$NC-C_{1}-9alkyl$$

Intermediates of formula (XI), wherein Q_{4'} represents Q_{1b}, said intermediates being represented by formula (XI-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LXXXIX), wherein W₁₃ represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as disodium carbonate, and in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as 3-methyl-2-butanone.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q} A^{1} A^{2} A^{2} + Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q} CH_{2}-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q} CH_{2}-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q} CH_{2}-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{Q} A^{2} A^{2}$$
(I-a-3)
(I-a-3)

Intermediates of formula (XIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XC) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid.

- Pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) may be obtained by the application of art-known procedures. Diastereomers may be separated by physical methods such as selective crystallization and chromatographic techniques, e.g., countercurrent distribution, liquid chromatography and the like.
- 10 The compounds of formula (I) as prepared in the hereinabove described processes are generally racemic mixtures of enantiomers which can be separated from one another following art-known resolution procedures. The racemic compounds of formula (I) which are sufficiently basic or acidic may be converted into the corresponding diastereomeric salt forms by reaction with a suitable chiral acid, respectively chiral base. Said diastereomeric 15 salt forms are subsequently separated, for example, by selective or fractional crystallization and the enantiomers are liberated therefrom by alkali or acid. An alternative manner of separating the enantiomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) involves liquid chromatography, in particular liquid chromatography using a chiral stationary phase. Said pure stereochemically isomeric forms may also be derived from the corresponding pure 20 stereochemically isomeric forms of the appropriate starting materials, provided that the reaction occurs stereospecifically. Preferably if a specific stereoisomer is desired, said compound will be synthesized by stereospecific methods of preparation. These methods will advantageously employ enantiomerically pure starting materials.
- The compounds of formula (I) show antiviral properties. Viral infections treatable using the compounds and methods of the present invention include those infections

30

35

5

brought on by ortho- and paramyxoviruses and in particular by human and bovine respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

The *in vitro* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds was tested in a test as described in the experimental part of the description, and may also be demonstrated in a virus yield reduction assay. The *in vivo* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds may be demonstrated in a test model using cotton rats as described in Wyde et al. (Antiviral Research (1998), 38, 31-42).

Due to their antiviral properties, particularly their anti-RSV properties, the compounds of formula (I) or any subgroup thereof, their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, are useful in the treatment of individuals experiencing a viral infection, particularly a RSV infection, and for the prophylaxis of these infections. In general, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of warm-blooded animals infected with viruses, in particular the respiratory syncytial virus.

The compounds of the present invention or any subgroup thereof may therefore be used as medicines. Said use as a medicine or method of treatment comprises the systemic administration to viral infected subjects or to subjects susceptible to viral infections of an amount effective to combat the conditions associated with the viral infection, in particular the RSV infection.

The present invention also relates to the use of the present compounds or any subgroup thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or the prevention of viral infections, particularly RSV infection.

The compounds of the present invention or any subgroup thereof may be formulated into various pharmaceutical forms for administration purposes. As appropriate compositions there may be cited all compositions usually employed for systemically administering drugs. To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention, an effective amount of the particular compound, optionally in addition salt form or metal complex, as the active ingredient is combined in intimate admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration. These pharmaceutical compositions are desirable in unitary dosage form suitable, particularly, for administration orally, rectally, percutaneously, or by parenteral injection. For example, in preparing the compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical

10

20

25

30

35

media may be employed such as, for example, water, glycols, oils, alcohols and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations such as suspensions, syrups, elixirs, emulsions and solutions; or solid carriers such as starches, sugars, kaolin, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules, and tablets.

- disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules, and tablets. Because of their ease in administration, tablets and capsules represent the most advantageous oral dosage unit forms, in which case solid pharmaceutical carriers are obviously employed. For parenteral compositions, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water, at least in large part, though other ingredients, for example, to aid solubility, may be included. Injectable solutions, for example, may be prepared in which the carrier comprises saline solution, glucose solution or a mixture of saline and glucose solution. Injectable suspensions may also be prepared in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed. Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations. In the compositions suitable for percutaneous
- administration, the carrier optionally comprises a penetration enhancing agent and/or a suitable wetting agent, optionally combined with suitable additives of any nature in minor proportions, which additives do not introduce a significant deleterious effect on the skin.

The compounds of the present invention may also be administered via oral inhalation or insufflation by means of methods and formulations employed in the art for administration via this way. Thus, in general the compounds of the present invention may be administered to the lungs in the form of a solution, a suspension or a dry powder, a solution being preferred. Any system developed for the delivery of solutions, suspensions or dry powders via oral inhalation or insufflation are suitable for the administration of the present compounds.

Thus, the present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition adapted for administration by inhalation or insufflation through the mouth comprising a compound of formula (I) and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Preferably, the compounds of the present invention are administered via inhalation of a solution in nebulized or aerosolized doses.

It is especially advantageous to formulate the aforementioned pharmaceutical compositions in unit dosage form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Unit dosage form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active ingredient calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. Examples of such unit dosage forms are tablets (including scored or coated

tablets), capsules, pills, suppositories, powder packets, wafers, injectable solutions or suspensions and the like, and segregated multiples thereof.

In general it is contemplated that an antivirally effective daily amount would be from 0.01 mg/kg to 500 mg/kg body weight, more preferably from 0.1 mg/kg to 50 mg/kg body weight. It may be appropriate to administer the required dose as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms, for example, containing 1 to 1000 mg, and in particular 5 to 200 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form.

10

15

5

The exact dosage and frequency of administration depends on the particular compound of formula (I) used, the particular condition being treated, the severity of the condition being treated, the age, weight, sex, extent of disorder and general physical condition of the particular patient as well as other medication the individual may be taking, as is well known to those skilled in the art. Furthermore, it is evident that said effective daily amount may be lowered or increased depending on the response of the treated subject and/or depending on the evaluation of the physician prescribing the compounds of the instant invention. The effective daily amount ranges mentioned hereinabove are therefore only guidelines.

20

25

Also, the combination of another antiviral agent and a compound of formula (I) can be used as a medicine. Thus, the present invention also relates to a product containing (a) a compound of formula (I), and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in antiviral treatment. The different drugs may be combined in a single preparation together with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. For instance, the compounds of the present invention may be combined with interferon-beta or tumor necrosis factor-alpha in order to treat or prevent RSV infections.

30 The following examples are intended to illustrate the present invention.

Experimental part

Hereinafter, "DMF" is defined as N,N-dimethylformamide, "DIPE" is defined as diisopropyl ether.

35 A. Preparation of the intermediate compounds

Example A1

a) Sodium methoxide (0.2 mol) was added to a mixture of N-(4-piperidinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrobromide (0.1 mol) in methanol (389ml), the mixture

10

15

20

25

30

35

was cooled on an ice bath and stirred for 2 hours.

Di-tert-butyldicarbonate (0.1mol) was added to a cooled mixture on an ice bath and then stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The mixture was evaporated and suspended in water/DIPE. The residue was filtered off, washed with water/DIPE and dried. The residue was boiled up in CH₃OH, yielding 17.46g (55.2%) of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinecarboxylate; mp. 249.4°C (interm. 1).

b) A mixture of intermediate (1) (0.05 mol), 2-(chloromethyl)quinoline monohydrochloride (0.055 mol) and sodium carbonate (0.075 mol) in DMF (250ml) was stirred at 55°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 97/3 and 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried, yielding 13.5g (59%) of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-(quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 2).

Example A2

tetrahydroquinoxaline.

- a) A mixture of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2(1*H*)-quinoxalinone in phosphoryl chloride (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in ice and CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was basified with NH₄OH. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 34g (86%) of 2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinoxaline (interm. 3).
- b) A mixture of intermediate (3), 1-bromo-2,5-pyrolidinedione (0.116 mol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (1.3g) in tetrachloromethane (400ml) was stirred and refluxed for 35 minutes, brought to room temperature and then filtered. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The residues were combined. The solvent was evaporated. The residue (60g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: cyclohexane/EtOAc 85/5; 15-35 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 25 g (43%) of (±)-5-bromo-2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinoxaline (interm. 4) and 12 g (21%) of (±)-8-bromo-2-chloro-5,6,7,8-
- c) A dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (60%) (0.0518 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C under N_2 flow to a mixture of intermediate (1) (0.0471 mol) in DMF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C/10°C for 1 hour. A solution of intermediate (4) (0.0565 mol) in DMF (50ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and poured out into H_2O . The precipitate was

20

25

35

filtered off and taken up in CH_2Cl_2 . The organic solution was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (32g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/$ NH₄OH 95/5/0.1; 20-45 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 13.3g (58%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 5). Example A3

- a) 2,3-Butanedione (0.0776 mol) was added at room temperature to a solution of sodium pyrosulfite (0.1 mol) in water (75ml). The mixture was heated to 70°C and then added to a solution of ethyl 2,3-diaminobenzoate (0.0776 mol) in water (75ml). The mixture was stirred at 100°C for 12 hours, cooled, basified with K₂CO₃ 10% and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (17.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/EtOAc 93/7; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 12g (67%) of ethyl
- were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 12g (67%) of ethyl 2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinecarboxylate (interm. 6).
 - b) Lithium chloride (0.6 mol) was added portionwise at 80°C to a mixture of intermediate (6) (0.06 mol) and potassium tetrahydroborate (0.6 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (300ml). The mixture was stirred at 80°C for 5 hours, cooled, poured out into H_2O and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed with H_2O , dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 10.5g (91%) of (\pm)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxaline-methanol (interm. 7).
 - c) MnO₂ (100g) was added portionwise at room temperature to a mixture of intermediate (7) (0.0546 mol) in dichloromethane (500ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, filtered over celite, washed with CH₂Cl₂ and the filtrate was evaporated. The product was used without further purification, yielding 7.8g (77%) of 2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinecarboxaldehyde (interm. 8).
 - d) Sodium tetrahydroborate (0.084 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a mixture of intermediate (8) (0.042 mol) in methanol (100ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for
- 30 minutes, hydrolized cold and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 6.7g (85%) 2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinemethanol (interm. 9).
 - e) Thionyl chloride (0.045 mol) was added dropwise at 5°C to a mixture of intermediate (9) (0.03 mol) in dichloromethane (50ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, poured out on ice and K₂CO₃ 10%. The organic layer was separated, washed with K₂CO₃ 10%, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was

20

30

35

evaporated. The product was used without further purification, yielding 6.2g (quant.) of 5-(chloromethyl)-2,3-dimethyl-quinoxaline (interm. 10).

f) A dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (60%) (0.021 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C under N₂ flow to a mixture of intermediate (1) (0.02 mol) in DMF
5 (30ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C under N₂ flow for 1 hour. A solution of intermediate (10) (0.03 mol) in a small amount of DMF was added dropwise at 5°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature under N₂ flow for 2 hours, hydrolized and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed several times with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (12.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97.5/2.5/0.1; 20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 7.8g (80%) of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[(2,3-dimethyl-5-quino-xalinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 11).

Example A4

8-Bromo-2-methylquinoline (0.0675 mol) was added portionwise at -70°C under N₂ flow to a mixture of a solution of butyllithium in hexane (1.6M) (0.135 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (300ml) and diethyl ether (300ml). The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. A solution of DMF (0.405 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (100ml) was added quickly. The mixture was cooled to -70°C and stirred for 15 minutes. Ethanol (70ml) and a NH₄Cl solution 10% were added. The mixture was brought to room temperature and stirred for 15 minutes. NH₄Cl was added. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification, yielding 15g (>100%) of 2-methyl-8-quinolinecarboxaldehyde (interm. 12).

25 Example A5

a) A mixture of 3-methoxy-2-methylquinoline (0.081 mol) in trifluoro-acetic acid (150ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3-4 bar pressure for 48 hours with palladium on activated carbon (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (2 equiv.), the catalyst was filtered through celite and washed with H₂O. The filtrate was basified with a concentrated NH₄OH solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 14.3g (quant.) of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-methylquinoline (interm. 13). b) 3-Chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid (0.1 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a mixture of intermediate (13) (0.067 mol) in dichloromethane (300ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, basified with K₂CO₃ 10% and separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic

layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 13.7g (quant.) of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-methylquinoline, 1-oxide (interm. 14).

- c) A mixture of intermediate (14) (0.067 mol) in acetic anhydride (100ml) was stirred at 90°C for 1 hour, poured out on ice and basified with NaOH 3N. CH₂Cl₂ was added.
- The organic layer was separated, washed with a diluted NaOH solution, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 16.8g (quant.) of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-quinolinemethanol acetate (ester) (interm. 15).
 - d) A mixture of intermediate (15) (0.067 mol) and sodium hydroxide (13g) in methanol (60ml) was stirred and refluxed for 20 minutes, poured out on ice and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated dried (145Cl₂) files.
- extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 12.3g (95%) of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-quinolinemethanol (interm. 16).

In a similar way was also prepared (\pm) -5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2-methyl-8-quinolinol (interm. 17).

15 Example A6

Phosphorus tribromide (0.0105 mol) was added dropwise at $0^{\circ}\text{C/5}^{\circ}\text{C}$ under N_2 flow to a mixture of (±)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2-methyl-8-quinolinol (intermediate 17) (0.03 mol) in toluene (20ml). The mixture was brought to room temperature and stirred at room temperature overnight. Ice water was added. The mixture was basified with a concentrated NaOH solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (6g)

was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH 99/1; 20-45 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 2g (29%) of (±)-8-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2-methylquinoline (interm. 18).

- a) A mixture of N-2,6-dimetyl-2,3-pyridinediamine (0.122 mol) in trifluoro-acetic acid (250ml) was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours and brought to room temperature. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH_2Cl_2 and K_2CO_3 10%. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated.
- The residue (32g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/EtOAc 97/3; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in petroleum ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 15g of residue (fraction 1). The mother layer was evaporated. The residue was combined with 14.1g of fraction 1, yielding 28.9 g of
- 35 1,6-dimethyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 100°C (interm. 19).

- b) 1-Bromo-2,5-pyrolidinedione (0.0735 mol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (1.5g) were added at room temperature to a solution of intermediate (19) (0.07 mol) in tetrachloromethane (450ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 7 hours, then brought to room temperature and filtered. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined. The solvent was evaporated. The residue (50g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 100/0 and 98/2; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 20.2g (49%) of 6-(bromomethyl)-1-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (interm. 20).
- c) A mixture of ethyl 4-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidine-carboxylate (0.0464 mol), intermediate (20) (0.051 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.1392 mol) in acetonitrile (250ml) was stirred and refluxed for 90 minutes and then brought to room temperature. Water was added and the mixture was extracted twice with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated.
- The product was used without further purification, yielding 23g (>100%) of ethyl 4- [[1-[[1-methyl-2-(trifluoromethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-6-yl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 21).

Example A8

- A mixture of ethyl 4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidine-carboxylate (0.0289 mol), 7-chloro-6,7-dihydro-5*H*-cyclopenta[b]pyridine (0.0289 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.0867 mol) in acetonitrile (250ml) was stirred and refluxed for 48 hours and then brought to room temperature. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined, poured out into H₂O and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered
- and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (25g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.5; 20-45 μm). Two fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 8g of ethyl 4-[[1-(6,7-dihydro-5*H*-1-pyrindin-7-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 22).

- a) A dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (0.261 mol) was added portionwise at room temperature under N_2 flow to a mixture of N-8-quinolinylformamide (0.174 mol) in DMF (500ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. A solution of 1-chloro-2-nitrobenzene (0.53 mol) in DMF (200ml) was added dropwise. The
- mixture was stirred at 140°C for 12 hours and then brought to room temperature. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was

separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (110g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/cyclohexane$ 80/20; 20-45 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 9.8g (21%) of N-(2-nitrophenyl)-8-quinolinamine (interm. 23).

- b) A mixture of 6-quinolinemethanamine (0.074 mol), 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine (0.0888 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.185 mol) in acetronitrile (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 5 hours and then cooled to room temperature. EtOAc and H₂O were added. The mixture was extracted with HCl 3N. The aqueous layer was basified with K₂CO₃ solid and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layer was dried
- 10 (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 17.8g (84%) of *N*-(3-nitro-2-pyridinyl)-8-quinolinemethanamine (interm. 24).

Example A10

- a) A mixture of intermediate (24) (0.064 mol) in methanol (200ml) was hydrogenated under a 3 bar pressure for 2 hours with Raney nickel (10g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was
- of hydrogen (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 14.8g (93%) of N2-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-2,3-pyridinediamine (interm. 25).
- b) A mixture of intermediate (25) (0.059 mol) and ethyl 4-isothiocyanato-1-piperidine-carboxylate (0.059 mol) in methanol (150ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and
 brought to room temperature. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 97/3; 20-45 μm). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 10.5g (37%) of ethyl 4-[[[[2-[(8-quinolinylmethyl)amino]-3-pyridinyl]amino]sulfinyl]-amino]-1-piperidine-carboxylate (interm. 26)
- c) A mixture of intermediate (26) (0.026 mol), mercury(II) oxide (0.052 mol) and sulfur (0.2g) in ethanol (120ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours, brought to room temperature and filtered over celite. The filtrate was evaporated, yielding 8.7g (96%) of 4-[[1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidine-carboxylate (interm. 27).

- a) A mixture of 8-quinolinecarboxaldehyde (0.092 mol) and 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid (0.3g) in 2-ethoxyethanol (110ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours using a Dean Stark apparatus. The solvent was evaporated. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The residues were combined and taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The
- organic solution was washed with K₂CO₃ 10% and decanted. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (41g) was

20

35

purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 98/2; 20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 20g (34%) of 8-[bis(2-ethoxyethoxy)methyl]quinoline (interm. 28). b) A mixture of 8-quinolinecarboxaldehyde (0.248 mol), triethoxymethane (0.4464 mol) and 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid (4g) in ethanol (250ml) was stirred and

- mol) and 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid (4g) in ethanol (250ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour, brought to room temperature, poured out into K_2CO_3 10% and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification, yielding 48.5g (80%) of 8-(diethoxymethyl)-quinoline (interm. 29).
- c) A mixture of 2-quinolinecarboxaldehyde (0.08 mol) and 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid (0.25g) in ethanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 48 hours and brought to room temperature. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was washed with K₂CO₃ 10% and with H₂O, then dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was used without
- 15 (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification, yielding 32.5g of 2-(diethoxymethyl)quinoline (interm. 30).

Example A12

Intermediate (1) (0.0377 mol) and intermediate (29) (0.0755 mol) were heated at 160° C for 1 hour and then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH 98/2; 15-35 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 15g (79%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[ethoxy(8-quino-linyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (interm. 31).

Example A13

- 4-Methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride (0.2222 mol) was added portionwise at 10°C to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [1-(hydroxymethyl)-2-methylpropyl]carbamic acid (ester) (0.202 mol) in pyridine (65ml). The mixture was stirred at 10°C for 2 hours. H₂O (75ml) was added at 10°C. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with H₂O and taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was washed with H₂O, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 49g (68%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-[[[(4-
- methylphenyl)sulfonyl]oxy]methyl]-2-methylpropyl]carbamate; mp. 85°C(interm. 32).

Example A14

a) A mixture of compound (33) (0.0347 mol), 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.052 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.104 mol) in acetonitrile (255ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H_2O and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was

used without further purification, yielding 16.84g of (\pm) -1-[4-[[1-[ethoxy(8-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (interm. 34) (quant.).

In a similar way were also prepared:

- 1-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone; 1-[4-[[1-(8-quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone; and 1-[4-[[1-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone.
- b) A mixture of intermediate (34) (0.036 mol) in methanol (200ml) was stirred at 10°C. Sodium tetrahydroborate (0.04 mol) was added portionwise. The mixture was stirred for 90 minutes. H₂O was added. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 17g (96%) of (±)-4-[[1-
- 15 [ethoxy(8-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-alpha-(1-methylethyl)-1-piperidineethanol (interm. 35).
 - c) Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.015 mol) was added dropwise at 0°C under N₂ flow to a solution of intermediate (35) (0.01 mol), phthalimide (0.015 mol) and triphenylphosphine (0.015 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. EtOAc was added. The mixture was extracted with HCl 3N and separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was washed twice with EtOAc, basified with K₂CO₃ solid and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layer

was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.2;

20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 2.3g (30%) of (±)-2-[2-[4-[[1-[ethoxy(8-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methylbutyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)dione (interm.

A solution of

(0.024 mol) (prepared according to A14b)

10

15

20

and Et₃N (0.072 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (100ml) was cooled to 0°C under N₂ flow. A mixture of methanesulfonyl chloride (0.036 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (a small amount) was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature while stirring for 3 hours. Water was added. The mixture was decanted. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 8.5g of intermediate (80) (86%).

e) Preparation of intermediate

A solution of 1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.0828 mol) in DMF (80ml) was cooled to 10°C. NaH 60% in oil (0.0828 mol) was added portionwise. The mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature while stirring for 1 hour. A mixture of intermediate (80) (0.0207 mol) (prepared according to A14d) in DMF (a small amount) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours, at 60°C for 5 hours and at room temperature for the weekend. The residue (9.6g) was crystallized from diethyl ether and CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 4g of intermediate (81) (42%).

Example A15

a) A mixture of 1-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.03 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.09 mol) in methanol (200ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours with palladium on activated carbon (1.3g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen, the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. Hydrogenation was continued for 24 hours. After uptake of hydrogen, the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 85/14/1;

- 20-45 μm). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.4g of (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 138°C (interm. 37).
- b) Di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (0.02 mol) was added at 5°C to a mixture of intermediate
 30 (37) (0.0186 mol) in dichloromethane (60ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and poured out into H₂O. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The product was used without

further purification, yielding 5.9g of (\pm) -1,1-dimethylethyl [1-[[4-[[1-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-2-methyl-propyl]carbamate (interm. 38).

Example A16

- A mixture of 1-[4-[[1-(8-quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]3-methyl-2-butanone (0.0222 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.0666 mol) in methanol
 (250ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with palladium
 on activated carbon (1.5g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen, the catalyst was
 filtered through celite, washed with CH₂Cl₂ and CH₃OH and the filtrate was
- evaporated. Palladium on activated carbon (1.5g) and methanol (250ml) were added again. Hydrogenation was continued at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours. After uptake of hydrogen, the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₂Cl₂ and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (22g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 95/5/0.1 and
- 85/15/1; 20-45 μm). Three pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 2.6g 1-[4-[[1-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (interm. 40) (fraction 1), 2.9g of fraction 2 and 0.7g of fraction 3. Fraction 2 and 3 were crystallized from CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.82g (±)-N-[1-[3-methyl-2-
- [(phenylmethyl)amino]butyl]-4-piperidinyl]-1-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 126°C and 0.55g of *N*-(4-piperidinyl)-1-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 205°C (comp. 48).

- a) A mixture of N-(4-piperidinyl)-1-(4-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (comp. 23) (0.0129 mol), chloroacetonitrile (0.0155 mol), potassium iodide (0.00129 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.0258 mol) in 4-methyl-2-pentanone (80ml) was stirred and refluxed for 5 hours. H₂O was added. The solvent was evaporated. H₂O and CH₂Cl₂ were added. The precipitate was filtered off. The filtrate was separated into its layers. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was
- evaporated. The residue (3.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 95/5/0.3; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.94g 4-[[1-(4-quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineacetonitrile; mp. 190°C (interm. 41).
- b) A mixture of N-(4-piperidinyl)-[1,2'-bi-1H-benzimidazol]-2-amine (comp. 71) (0.01 mol), chloroacetonitrile (0.01 mol) and sodium hydrogen carbonate (0.02 mol) in

DMF (50ml) was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried, yielding 2.3g (63%) of product. This fraction was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 1.36g (37%) of 4-[(1,2'-bi-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)amino]-1-piperidine-acetonitrile (interm. 42).

Example A18

Preparation of intermediate

- A mixture of 2-chloro-1*H*-benzimidazole (0.0189 mol) and 1,1-dimethylethyl 2-aminocyclohexanecarbamoate (0.04725 mol) (prepared according to A1a))was stirred at 140°C for 3 hours, then brought to room temperature and taken up in CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH. The same procedure was repeated 3 times on the same quantities of 2-chloro-1*H*-benzimidazole and 1,1-dimethylethyl 2-aminocyclohexanecarbamoate.
- The mother layers were brought together, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (28g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 96/4/0.1; 15-35μm). Two fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 4.5g of intermediate (84) (24%).

Example A19

Preparation of intermediate

A mixture of quantities of ethyl 4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.0154 mol), N N (0.0154 mol) (prepared

according to A14d) and K_2CO_3 (0.0463 mol) in CH₃CN (50ml) and DMF (5ml) was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours, poured out into H₂O and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:

25 CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 97/3; 35-70μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding: 0.87g of intermediate (76) (13%).

10

15

Example A20

a) Preparation of intermediate

A solution of

A1b) in HCl 6N (60ml) was stirred and refluxed for 12 hours and then brought to room temperature. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in 2-propanol. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with CH₃CN, washed with diethyl ether and dried, yielding: 4g of intermediate (82) (94%).

b) Preparation of intermediate

Intermediate (82 (0.0094 mol) was added at room temperature to CH_2Cl_2 (70ml). Et_3N (0.0188 mol) was added. 1,1'-carbonylbis-1H-imidazole (0.0188 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4.5 hours. (Methylamino)acetonitrile .HCl (0.0188 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The organic layer was separated, washed twice with water, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH 98.5/1.5; 35-70 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (2.2g) was crystallized from CH_3CN . The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding: 1.5g of intermediate (83) (41%).

Example A21

A mixture of intermediate

(prepared according to A1b) in HCl 3 N (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in EtOAc and NH4OH. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and filtered. The solvent was evaporated. The product was used

without further purification, yielding 14g of

Tables 1, 2 and 3 list intermediates which were prepared analogous to one of the above examples.

Table 1

5

Int. No.	Ex. No.	Rª	R ^b	R ^c	n	а	*	b	R ^d	R ^e	R ^f	R ^g
43	A10c	Н	H	Н	1	N	2	С	-	H	Н	Н
44	A12	CH ₃	H	$O(CH_2)_2OC_2H_5$	1	CH	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
45	A12	CH ₃	H	$O(CH_2)_2OC_2H_5$	1	CH	2	C	-	H	H	Н
46	A7c	CH ₃	Н	Н	1	CH	2	N	-	OCH ₃	-	Н
47	A7c	Н	H	H ·	1	СН	2	С	-	H	H	Cl
48	A7c	Н	H	Н	1	СН	2	С	-	H	Cl	Н
49	A7c	Н	H	H	1	СН	2	С	-	Н	H	Н
2	Alb	CH ₃	H	Н	1	СН	2	C	-	Н	Н	Н
50	A12	CH ₃	CH_3	OC ₂ H ₅	1	CH	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
51	A12	CH ₃	H	OC ₂ H ₅	1	CH	2	C	-	H	Н	Н
52	A12	CH ₃	H	OC ₂ H ₅	1	СН	2	С	-	OCH ₃	Н	Н
31	A12	CH ₃	Н	OC ₂ H ₅	1	СН	8	С	Н	H	Н	-
53	A3f	Н	H	Н	1	СН	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
54	A3f	CH ₃	Н	H	1	СН	8	N	H	Н	-	

Int. No.	Ex. No.	Rª	R ^b	R°	n	a	*	b	R ^d	Re	R ^f	R ^g
55	A7c	CH ₃	H	Н	1	СН	8	С	CH ₃	Н	Н	-
11	A3f	CH ₃	H	H	1	СН	8	N	CH ₃	CH₃	_	-
56	A7c	H	H	H	1	СН	4	С	H	Н	-	Н
57	A7c	H	CH_3	H	1	CH	8	С	H	H	н	-
27	A10c	H	H	H	1	N	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
58	A10c	H	H	-	0	CH	8	С	H	Н	Н	-
66	A12	CH ₃	CH_3	$O(C_2H_5)OC_2H_5$	1	СН	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
67	A12	CH ₃	Н	$O(C_2H_5)OC_2H_5$	1	СН	8	С	H	Н	Н	-
68	A1b	CH_3	CH ₃	CH ₃	1	СН	8	С	Н	Н	Н	-
69	A1b	CH ₃	Н	H	1	СН	2	С	-	OCH ₃	Н	н
70	A1b	CH ₃	Н	H	1	СН	2	N	-	Н	-	Н
71	Alb	CH ₃	Н	H	1	СН	8	С	OCH ₃	Н	H	-

^{* =} position bicyclic heterocycle

Table 2

$$CH_3 - \begin{matrix} R^a & O \\ -C & O \\ R^a \end{matrix}$$

			- total		
Int. No.	Ex. No.	Rª	R ^b	n	L
59	A2c	СН3	Н	0	N CI
60	A8	Н	Н	0	
61	A2c	Н	Н	0	N
5	A2c	СН₃	Н	0	N CI
21	A7c	Н	H	1	N CF_3 CH_3

Int. No.	Ex. No.	Rª	R ^b	n	L
62	A3f	СН3	Н	1	OCH ₃
63	A7c	СН3	Н	1	N
64	A7c	Н	Н	1	$ \frac{1}{s}$ $\frac{1}{s}$
65	A2c	СН3	Н	0	
22	A8	Н	Н	0	
72	A2c	СН₃	СН₃	0	N CI
73	A2c	СН₃	СН₃	0	N CI
74	A2c	СН₃	СН₃	0	
75	A2c	СН₃	СН3	0	N CH ₃
76	A19	Н	н	1	

Table 3

Int. No.		L	Physical data
77	A1b	NH O C(CH ₃) ₃	
78	A1b	O C(CH ₃) ₃	
79	A1b	H O C(CH ₃) ₃	trans
80	A14d	O 1 O CH ₃	
81	A14e	CH ₃	
82	A20	НО	
83	A20	CH ₃	

B. Preparation of the final compounds

Example B1

5

- a) A mixture of 2-propanol and hydrochloric acid (15ml) was added to a mixture of intermediate (2) (0.0284 mol) in 2-propanol (150ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 90 minutes and cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with 2-propanol and DIPE and dried, yielding 10.36g of *N*-(4-piperidinyl)-1-(2-quinolinyl-methyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrochloride (comp.1).
- b) A mixture of compound (1) (0.01 mol) and sodium carbonate (0.03 mol) in
 4-methyl-2-pentanone (250ml) was stirred and refluxed for a few hours using a water separator (until gas development stops). 2-Bromoethyl carbamic acid 1,1-dimethylethyl ester (0.015 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 18 hours using a water separator, then cooled, washed with H₂O, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel
 (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/C₂H₅OH 95/5 and 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 3.8g of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (comp. 2).
 - c) A mixture of compound (2) (0.0076 mol) in a mixture of 2-propanol and hydrochloric acid (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour

15

20

and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with 2-propanol and DIPE and dried, yielding 3.08g of *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-quinolinyl-methyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate (comp. 3).

- d) A mixture of compound (115) (0.00305 mol) in HBr/HOAc 33% (34ml) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, poured out on ice, basified with a concentrated NH₄OH solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 96/4/0.2; 15-40 μm). Two fractions (F1 and F2) were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding
- 0.56g F1 (46%) and 0.69g F2 (50%). F1 was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.27g of (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (comp. 116).
 - e) A mixture of compound (155) (0.0024 mol) in CH₃OH (3ml) and 2-propanol (15ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours, filtered, washed with 2-propanol and dried. The residue (1.05g) was taken up in CH₂Cl₂ and basified with NH₄OH. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (0.42g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 85/15/2; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (0.35g) was dissolved in CH₃OH and converted into the ethanedioic acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. This fraction was taken up in water and CH₂Cl₂ and alkalized with K₂CO₃ 10%. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (0.21g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/
- NH₄OH 75/28/1; 15-40 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 0.13g of compound (156).

Example B2

A mixture of intermediate (27) (0.02 mol) in hydrochloric acid (6N) (85ml) was stirred and refluxed at 50°C overnight and then brought to room temperature. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in K₂CO₃ 10% and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 5g (69%) of N-(4-piperidinyl)-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine (comp. 41).

Example B3

A mixture of intermediate (41) (0.00668 mol) in a solution of ammonia in methanol (7N) (70ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 5 hours

with Raney nickel (2.7g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (2 equiv.), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₂Cl₂ and CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂ and a small amount of CH₃OH. The organic solution was washed with H₂O, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.6g (60%) of N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-quinolinyl-methyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 196°C (comp. 24).

Example B4

5

10

15

20

25

35

A mixture of intermediate (36) (0.00351 mol) in hydrazine (2.5ml) and ethanol (30ml) was stirred and refluxed for 20 minutes and brought to room temperature. Ice water was added. The mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 and separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was washed twice with CH_2Cl_2 . The combined organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 1g of (\pm)-N-[1-[1-(aminomethyl)-2-methylpropyl]-4-piperidinyl]-1-[ethoxy(8-quinolinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 202°C (comp. 100).

Example B5

Intermediate (32) (0.1382 mol) was added at 55°C to a mixture of (±)-1-[ethoxy(3-methoxy-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-*N*-(4-piperidinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.0346 mol) and potassium carbonate (0.242 mol) in acetonitrile (108ml) and DMF (20ml) (1 equiv of intermediate (32) was added every hour). The mixture was stirred at 55°C for 1 hour and filtered. The filtrate was poured out into H₂O and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed with a saturated NaCl solution, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 98/2/0.4 and 96/4/0.5; 20-45 μm). Two fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 2.5g (23%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-[[4-[[1-[ethoxy(3-methoxy-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-2-methylpropyl]carbamate (comp. 38).

30 Example B6

A mixture of 1-[4-[[1-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.0158 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.0474 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours with palladium on activated carbon (0.7g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (11.5g) was purified by column chromatography

10

over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 94/6/0.5; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 4g of residue. This fraction was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt with 2-propanol/ HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.1g of product. This fraction was converted into the free base and then purified by column chromatography over C₁₈ (eluent: CH₃OH/NH₄OAc 60/40 and 80/20; column: KROMASIL C18). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding 0.8g of fraction 1 and 2g of fraction 2. Fraction 1 was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.5g of (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; mp. 135°C (comp. 6). Fraction 2 was dissolved in 2-propanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:4). The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.2g of (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; mp. 230°C (comp. 46).

15 Example B7

- a) A dispersion of sodium hydride in a mineral oil (60%) (0.01 mol) was added portionwise at 0° C under N_2 flow to a mixture of intermediate (38) (0.005 mol) in DMF (25ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. A solution of 2-(bromomethyl)-3-methoxyquinoline (0.0055 mol) in DMF (10ml) was added
- dropwise. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, hydrolized with K₂CO₃ 10% and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, washed with NaCl, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 4.5g (>100%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-[[4-[[1-[(3-methoxy-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-amino]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-2-methylpropyl]carbamate (comp. 14).
- b) A dispersion of sodium hydride in a mineral oil (60%) (0.014 mol) was added portionwise at 0°C under N₂ flow to a mixture of intermediate (38) (0.007 mol) in DMF (30ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. A solution of (±)-2,8-di-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinoline (0.0084 mol) in DMF (10ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. H₂O and EtOAc were added.
- The organic layer was separated, washed with a saturated NaCl solution, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (5.6g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.5; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 1.1g (25%) of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-[[4-[[1-(2-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-
- quinolinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]methyl]-2-methylpropyl]-carbamate (comp. 55).

-65-

c) A mixture of intermediate 84 (0.0145 mol), 8-bromomethylquinoline (0.0174 mol) and K_2CO_3 (0.029 mol) in CH₃N (70ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, then brought to room temperature. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H_2O and extracted twice with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether/CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.07g of compound 79 (74%).

Example B8

5

10

- c) (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate (0.00218 mol) was basified with K₂CO₃ 10%. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give A'. A mixture of A' in dichloromethane (50ml) was cooled to 0°C. A solution of tribromoborane in dichloromethane (0.01526 mol) was added dropwise.
- The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured out on ice, basified with a concentrated NH₄OH solution, decanted and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (1.1g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 90/10/0.5; 20-45 μm). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:4) with HCl/2-propanol. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.5g (37%) of (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-3-hydroxy-2-quinolinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydro-chloride

25 Example B9

monohydrate; mp. 240°C (comp. 63).

- a) A mixture of compound 158 (0.0089 mol) in HCl 3N (40ml) was stirred at 100°C for 12 hours, then brought to room temperature and poured out on ice and NH₄OH. EtOAc was added. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with EtOAc and dried, yielding 2g of compound 159.
- b) A mixture of compound 168 (0.00895 mol) in HCl 3N (35ml) was stirred at 100°C for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in EtOAc. The mixture was basified with NH₄OH. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction (0.7g) was crystallized from CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.3g of compound 167.

10

20

c) A mixture of compound 176 (0.00373 mol) in HCl 3N (20ml) was stirred at 100°C for 12 hours, brought to room temperature, poured out on ice, basified with NH₄OH and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. This fraction was dissolved in 2-propanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3). The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.5g of compound 173 (77%).

Example B10

5

A mixture of intermediate

(prepared according to A1b)), 1,2-ethanediamine (0.02 mol) and NaCN (0.0002 mol) in CH₃OH (7ml) was heated at 45°C for 4 hours and then brought to room temperature. Water was added. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (0.65g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 90/10/1; 35-70 μ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated, yielding 0.42g of compound 170 (56%)

15 Example B11

A mixture of intermediate

(prepared according to A14a)) and formic acid/NH₃ (0.0462 mol) in formamide (35ml) was stirred at 140°C for 30 min and then brought to room temperature. CH₂Cl₂ was added. The organic layer was separated, washed with K_2CO_3 10%, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (4g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.1; 15-40 μ m). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. The second fraction was crystallized from CH₃CN and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding: 1.37g of compound 137 (46%).

Example B12

Isopropyl titanate (IV) (0.0294 mol) was added at room temperature to a mixture of intermediate 85 (0.0245 mol) and 1-acetylpiperazine (0.027 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (50ml) and ethanol (50ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 7 hours. NaBH₃CN (0.0245 mol) was added portionwise. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. H₂O was added. The mixture was filtered over celite and washed with CH₂Cl₂. The filtrate was separated into its layers. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (6.7g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 95/5/0.2; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. This fraction was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried, yielding: 0.64g of compound 176.

Tables 4 to 13 list the compounds of formula (I) which were prepared according to one of the above examples.

15 <u>Table 4</u>

Comp No.	Ex. No.	а	Rª	R ^b	*	R ^C	Physical data
1	Bla	CH	Н	Н	2	H	HC1 (1:2)
2	Blb	СН	н	н	2	**	
3	Blc	СН	н	н	2	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
4	Bla	СН	Н	н	8	Н	
5	Bla	СН	н	н	2	Н	
6	B 5	CH	н	Н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
7	B3	CH	н	н	8	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	
8	В3	CH	Н	н	2	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)
9	Bla	CH	H	8-C1	2	Н	HCl (1:2)
10	Blc	CH	н	н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
11	В3	СН	H	8-C1	2	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	
12	Bla	CH	4-OH	H	2	Н	

Comp No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	*	R ^C	Physical data
13	В3	СН	Н	8-C1	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
14	B6a	СН	3-OCH ₃	H	2	(C=O)OC(CH ₃) ₃	
15	Blc	CH	3-OCH ₃	Н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
16	B6a	N	3-CH ₃	Н	2	***	
17	Bla	СН	Н	H	8	Н	HC1 (1:3)
18	Bla	N	Н	Н	8	Н	
19	Blc	N	Н	Н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	HCl(1:3); H ₂ 0(1:3)
20	Bla	N	3-OCH ₃	Н	2	Н	
21	B4	N	3-OCH ₃	H	2	***	
22	Blc	N	3-OCH ₃	н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
23	Bla	СН	Н	н	4	Н	
24	B2	CH	Н	Н	4	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	
88	Bla	N	2-CH ₃	3-CH ₃	8	Н	
89	Blc	N	2-CH ₃	3-CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:2)
90	Bla	CH	2-CH ₃	H	8	Н	
91	Blc	CH	2-CH ₃	Н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)
92	B2	СН	2-CH ₃	Н	8	CH₂CH₂NH₂	
104	В3	СН	Н	Н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	
105	В3	СН	Н	н	8	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	
106	Blc	N	3-CH ₃	н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H ₂ 0 (1:2)
109	B5	СН	H	Н	8	***	
110	B5	N	2-CH ₃	3-CH ₃	8	***	
111	B5	СН	2-CH ₃	Н	8	***	
112	B5	N	н	н	8	***	
113	B7	СН	H	Н	8	***	

- * position bicyclic heterocycle
- ** (CH₂)₂NH(C=O)OC(CH₃)₃
- *** CH₂CH(2-propyl)NH(C=O)OC(CH₃)₃

Table 5

Comp No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R ^b	*	R ^c	G	Physical data
25	B1a	СН	Н	Н	2	Н	CHOC₂H₅	
26	В3	СН	Н	Н	2	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	CHOC ₂ H ₅	H ₂ O (1:1)
27	В3	СН	Н	Н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
28	Bla	CH	Н	Н	2	Н	***	
29	В3	СН	Н	Н	2	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	***	H ₂ O (1:1)
30	Bla	СН	н	Н	8	Н	***	
31	В3	СН	н	Н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	***	
32	В3	СН	Н	Н	8	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	***	
33	Bla	СН	Н	Н	8	Н	CHOC₂H₅	
34	B1a	СН	3-OCH ₃	Н	2	Н	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
35	Bla	N	Н	Н	2	Н	CH ₂	
36	В4	N	Н	Н	2	**	CH ₂	
37	B1c	N	Н	Н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl (1:4)
38	B4	CH	3-OCH ₃	Н	2	**	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
39 ⁽⁹⁾	B1c	CH	3-OCH₃	Н	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CHOC ₂ H ₅	HCl (1:3);
		l						$H_2O(1:2)$
40	B2	N	H	Н	2	CH₂CH₂NH₂	CH ₂	
41	Bla	N	H	'H	8	Н	CH ₂	
42	Blc	N	H	Н	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	
43	B1a	CH	H	CH ₃		H	CH ₂	
44	B1a	CH	H	CH ₃	8	H	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
45	B2	N	H	H	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	
100	B3	СН	Н	Н	8	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
107	Blc	CH	H	H	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂ сн(сн ₃) ₂ Q	CHOC ₂ H ₅	
115	B5	CH	H	CH ₃	8	O C(CH ₃) ₃	CH ₂	
116	B1d	СН	Н	CH ₃	8	H CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH_2	

Comp No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R ^b	*	R ^c	G	Physical data
117	B1d	СН	Н	CH ₃	8	CH=O	CH ₂	
118	Bld	СН	Н	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	***	H ₂ O(1:1)
119	B1d	CH	H	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	***	
120	В3	N	Н	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
								H ₂ O(1:3)
121	B1d	СН	Н	CH₃	8	CH=O	***	
122	B1c	N	Н	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
								H ₂ O(1:1)
123	B1d	CH	Н	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	
124	Blc	СН	Н	H	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	***	HCl(1:3);
							İ	H ₂ O(1:2)
125	B1c	СН	Н	CH ₃	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CHCH ₃	H ₂ O(1:1)
126	B1d	CH	3-OCH₃	H	2	CH₂CH₂NH₂	CH ₂	H ₂ O(1:2)
127	B1c	CH	4-CH ₃	H	2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH_2	HCl(1:4);
								H ₂ O(1:1)
128	B1c	CH	H	Н	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
								H ₂ O(1:1)
129	B1c	CH	H	H	8	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CHCH ₃	H ₂ O(1:1)
130	B1c	CH	4-CH ₃	H	2	CH₂CH₂NH₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
				·				H ₂ O(1:2)
131	B1c	CH	H	H	4	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
						0		$H_2O(1:2)$
131	B1b	CH	Н	CH ₃	8	C(CH ₃) ₃	CH ₂	
						N O N		
132	B1b	CH	Н	H	8	C(CH ₃) ₃	CH ₂	
	i					N O C(CH ₃) ₃		
133	В2	СН	Н	Н	8	н	СНСН₃	HCl(1:2);
				•			J	H ₂ O(1:2)
134	Blc	СН	Н	Н	2	CH₂CH₂NH₂	CHCH₃	H ₂ O(1:1)
135	B2	СН	4-CH ₃	Н	2	Н	CH ₂	HCl(1:2)
136	B2	N	Н	CH ₃	8	Н	CH ₂	
137	B11	CH	Н	Н	8	CH=O	CH ₂	

^{*} position quinoline

^{**} $CH_2CH(2-propyl)NH(C=O)OC(CH_3)_3$

^{***} CHO(CH₂)₂OC₂H₅

Table 6

Comp. No.	Ex. No.	*	G	Rª	Physical data
46	B5	2	CH ₂	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
47	B5	8	CH ₂	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
48	В5	8	-	H	
49	В5	8		CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)

^{*} position bicyclic heterocycle

5 <u>Table 7</u>

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	a	Rª	G	R ^b	R°	Physical data
50	B1a	8	СН	Н	-	Н	Н	
51	B5	8	СН	н	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	
52	Bla	8	N	Н	- :	Н	Н	HCl (1:3)
53	В3	8	N	H	-	CH(2-propyl)CH ₂ NH ₂	Н	
54 ⁽³⁾	В3	8	N	H	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	H ₂ O (1:1)
55	B6b	8	СН	2-Br	-	**	Н	
56	B1c	8	СН	2-Br	~	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:3)
57	B6b	8	CH	2-CH ₃	-	**	Н	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	a	\mathbb{R}^{a}	G	R ^b	R°	Physical data
58	B1c	8	СН	2-CH ₃	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
59	Вба	2	CH	Н	CH ₂	**	н	
60	B1c	2	CH	Н	CH_2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
61	Вба	2	CH	з-осн	CH ₂	**	н	
62	B1c	2	CH	з-осн	CH_2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
63	В7	2	CH	з-он	CH_2	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
64	Bla	8	N	3-Cl	-	Н	H	
65	B4	8	N	3-Cl	-	**	H	
66	B1c	8	N	3-C1	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
67	B2	8	N	H	-	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	H	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:3)
68	B1a	8	N	2-Cl	-	Н	H	
69	B4	8	N	2-Cl	-	**	Н	
70 ⁽¹⁰⁾	Bic	8	N	2-Cl	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
139	B1c	5	N	3-Cl	-	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₃	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:2)
140	B1d	5	N	H	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₃	
141	B1c	5	N	2-Cl	-	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₃	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:3)
142	B1c	5	N	2-Cl		CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₃	

- * position bicyclic heterocycle
- ** CH₂CH(2-propyl)NH(C=O)OC(CH₃)₃

Table 8

5

$$R^a$$
 R^b
 R^a
 R^a
 R^a
 R^a
 R^a
 R^a
 R^a

Comp. No	Ex. No.	a	b	Rª	R ^b	G	R°	Physical data
71		N	N	H	Н	-	Н	
72		S	N	-	Н	_	Н	HBr(1:2);H ₂ O(2:1)
73	B1a	0	N	_	Н	-	н	

Comp. No	Ex. No.	a	b	Rª	R ^b	G	R ^c	Physical data
74		N	N	Н	Н	CH ₂	Н	
75		N	N	Н	Н	CH ₂	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)
76		0	СН	-	Н	CH ₂	Н	
77		N	N	CH ₃	Н	CH ₂	н	
78	B1c	N	N	CH ₃	Н	CH ₂	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	
79		s	СН	-	Н	CH_2	н	
80	Bla	s	N	-	н	CH ₂	н	HCl(1:2);H ₂ O(1:1)
81	B2	N	N	H	Н	-	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	HCl(1:4)
82	Bla	N	N	H	OCH ₃	CH ₂	н	
83	B1b	s	N	-	Н	-	*	H ₂ O (1:1)
84	B1c	S	N	-	Н	-	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
85	B1b	N	N	CH ₃	Н	CH ₂	*	
86	В1ь	0	N	-	н	-	*	
87	B1c	0	N	-	Н	_	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	

* CH₂CH₂NH(C=O)OC(CH₃)₃

Table 9

Comp. No.	Ex. No.	Rª	Physical data
102	B1a	Н	HCl (1:3)
103	B5	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)

Table 10

Rnr

Comp.	Ex.	R ^b	R ^c	G-R ^a	Physical data
No.	No.				
93		H	Н	-CH ₂	
101		CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	Н	-CH ₂ -N	
94		CH ₂ CH ₂ NH(C=O)O CH ₂ CH ₃	Н	_CH ₂	
95		CH₂CH₂NH₂	Н	-CH ₂	
96	Bla	Н	Н	$-CH_2$ N CF_3	
97	В2	CH₂CH₂NH₂	Н	$-H_2C$ N N CF_3	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
98	Bla	Н	Н	-CH ₂	
99	Blc	CH₂CH(2-propyl)NH₂	Н	—CH ₂ ——	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:3)
108	В5	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	Н	-H ₂ C	

Rnr

Comp.	Ex.	R ^b	R ^c	G-R ^a	Physical data
No.	No.				
114		*	Н	—CH ₂ ———	
143	В6	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	СН₃	-H ₂ C-	

^{*} CH₂CH(2-propyl)NH(C=O)OC(CH₃)₃

Table 11

5

Co No.	Ex. No.	a-a1-a2-a3	*	Rª	R ^c	R ^b	G	Physical data
144	B1c	CH=N-CH=C	8	H	-	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:3);
								H ₂ O(1:4)
145	Blc	CH=C-N=C	8	H	Н	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:3);
			,					H ₂ O(1:2)
146	Blc	CH=C-C=N	8	-	Н	CH ₂ CH(2-propyl)NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:3);
								H ₂ O(1:2)
147	B2	CH=C-CH=C	8	CH ₃	Cl	Н	CH ₂	
148	B3	CH=N-CH=C	8	Н	-	CH2CH2NH2	CHOC2H5	
149	B2	CH=C-CH=N	8	-	Н	Н	CH_2	HCl(1:2);
1	ļ							H ₂ O(1:1)
150	B1c	CH=C-CH=C	7	CH ₃	Cl	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
								H ₂ O(1:2)
151	В3	CH=N-CH=C	8	H	_	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CH ₂	

Co No.	Ex. No.	a-a1-a2-a3	*	Rª	R°	R ^b	G	Physical data
152	B2	CH=N-CH=C	8	Н	-	Н	CH ₂	HCl(1:4);
	İ							H ₂ O(1:2)
153	В3	CH=C-CH=N	8	-	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ NH ₂	CHOC₂H₅	

• position bicyclic heterocycle

Co No.	Ex. No.	Rª	R ^b	Physical data
154	B1c	Н	3-propylamine	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
155	Blb	н	(H ₃ C) ₃ C NH ₂ NH ₂	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
156	Ble	Н	H ₂ N NH	
157	В7с	Н	(H ₃ C) ₃ C — HN	trans
158	В7с	Н	H ₃ C NH	
159	B9a	н	2-ethylamine	
160	Blc	H	3-propylmethylamine	
161	Blc	Н	H ₂ N N H	cis;HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:1)
162	Blc	н	CH ₃	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:1)
163	B4	н	3-isobutylamine	
164	Blc	н	2-ethylmethylamine	HCl(1:2)

Со	Ex.	Rª	R ^b	Physical
No.	No.			data
165	B1a	Н	H_2N	trans;H ₂ O(1:1)
166	B9a	CH ₃	2-ethylamine	
167	B9b	Н	H_2N	cis
168	В7с	Н	H ₃ C N N H	cis
169	В3	Н	H ₂ N CH ₂	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O(1:2)
170	B10	Н	H ₂ N CH ₂	
171	B10	Н	H ₂ N CH CH ₃) ₂	H ₂ O(1:1)
172	B1c	Н	H_2N N CH_2	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O(1:2)
173	В9с	Н	HIN CH ₂ —	HCl(1:3)H ₂ O(1:2)
174	B1c	Н	H_2N N CH CH_3	
175	В7с	Н		cis
176	B12	Н	(H ₃ C) ₃ C—O HN O H ₂ N N CH CH ₃	

Table 13

$$G-N$$
 NH
 NH
 Ra
 Ra

Co	Ex.	G	L	a.	R _a .	Physical
No.	No.					data
177	B1d	2-ethylamine	N CH ₃	СН	H	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O (1:3)
178	B1c	2-ethylamine	CH ₃	N	Н	HCl(1:4);H ₂ O (1:4)
179	Blc	2-ethylamine	N CH ₃	СН	СН3	H ₂ O(1:1)
180	B1b	(H ₃ C) ₃ C O N CH ₂ -	N CH ₃	СН	Н	
181	B1c	CH(CH ₃) ₂ H ₂ N CH ₂ —	N	СН	Н	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O (1:2)
182	Blc	2-ethylamine	NH O	СН	Н	HCl(1:3);H ₂ O (1:2)
183	Blc	2-ethylamine		СН	н	
184	Blc	2-ethylamine	N N	СН		HCl(1:4);H ₂ O (1:1)
185	B1d	2-ethylamine	COL	СН	Н	C ₂ H ₂ O ₄ (2:7)

-79-

Table 14: Physical data

Comp.		3]	 H		N	melting point
No.							
	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	
1	61.40	60.70	5.85	6.04	16.27	15.54	
3	51.08	51.16	6.07	6.35	14.89	14.17	į
4	73.92	73.29	6.49	6.52	19.59	19.38	206°C
6	73.27	73.12	7.74	7.73	18.99	18.77	135°C
7	73.27	71.85	7.74	7.80	18.99	18.61	188°C
8	70.40	69.73	7.88	7.40	18.24	17.56	80°C
9			;				> 250°C
10	73.27	72.82	7.74	7.58	18.99	18.63	172°C
11							190°C
13	67.98	66.43	6.97	6.79	17.62	17.02	164°C
15	71.16	70.66	7.68	7.58	17.78	17.81	210°C
19	51.45	51.64	6.97	6.89	16.15	15.96	240°C
22	68.47	68.04	7.45	7.52	20.70	20.55	206°C
23	73.92	71.70	6.49	6.53	19.59	19.92	140°C
24	71.97	69.89	7.05	7.10	20.98	20.07	196°C
89	51.46	53.22	6.94	7.11	15.00	15.14	24°C
91	70.85	69.82	8.07	8.29	17.71	17.48	180°C
92	72.43	71.51	7.29	7.30	20.27	20.10	176°C
104	72.87	70.26	7.53	7.27	19.61	18.73	88°C
105	7 2.87	71.37	7.53	7.39	19.61	19.39	135°C
106	65.69	66.19	7.96	7.62	19.86	19.71	110°C
26	69.02	69.16	7.99	7.68	16.65	16.79	140°C
27	71.57	70.60	7.87	7.80	17.27	17.14	166°C
29	67.86	67.64	8.08	7.79	15.32	15.15	100°C
31	70.16	68.97	7.98	7.97	15.84	15.56	110°C
32	70.16	69.35	7.98	8.34	15.84	14.73	98°C
33	71.79	70.72	6.78	7.17	17.44	16.69	145°C
37							215°C
39							209°C
40	68.80	66.01	6.78	6.60	24.42	23.31	138°C
42	70.40	69.14	7.50	7.50	22.10	21.68	180°C
43	74.36	73.02	6.78	6.65	18.85	18.41	155°C
44	72.26	71.53	7.03	7.26	16.85	16.40	186°C
45	68.80	66.74	6.78	6.64	24.42	23.77	178°C
100	71.57	71.16	7.87	7.93	17.27	17.44	202°C
107	71.57	69.77	7.87	7.85	17.27	16.40	78°C

C				H	T	N	melting point
Comp. No.	C		J	11.		14	mennig pome
110.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	
46						•	230°C
47							230°C
48	72.59	71.54	7.25	7.13	20.16	19.91	205°C
49	69.30	70.08	8.50	8.37	18.65	18.93	140°C
51	72.19	70.66	8.39	8.43	19.43	18.79	120°C
53	69.25	68.88	8.14	8.28	22.61	22.23	
54	66.49	66.30	8.26	7.77	21.71	21.53	144°C
56	46.27	47.19	6.57	6.44	12.45	12.16	> 250°C
58							210°C
60							212°C
62	52.51	53.38	7.24	7.63	13.12	12.37	240°C
63	51.76	52.74	7.08	7.32	13.41	12.93	240°C
66	50.43	50.60	6.60	6.58	16.47	16.28	> 250°C
67	47.62	46.73	6.90	6.83	17.67	17.19	230°C
70							238°C
80							210°C
81	48.38	47.77	5.61	5.61			
82	67.00	66.51	6.43	6.29	22.32	22.12	
83	61.15	62.11	6.71	6.60	16.46	16.88	
84	48.51	48.46	5.62	5.35	16.16	16.03	
87	67.00	66.42	6.43	6.55	22.32	21.80	#
103	68.78	68.77	8.31	8.23	19.25	18.78	88°C
96	58.73	58.59	5.16	5.03	22.83	22.40	144°C
97							210°C
99	53.51	52.63	7.15	7.02	13.87	13.24	200°C
108	70.08	68.99	7.92	8.10	22.00	21.65	160°C
116							203°C
117							218°C
141							225°C
177							>260°C
139							190°C
118							48°C
144	5 0.55			0.14	01.00	10.00	220°C
143	70.55	66.03	8.11	8.14	21.33	18.98	14500
119							145°C
121							185°C
140							172°C
120	<u> </u>	<u> </u>					210°C

-81-

Comp.	C	1	1			N	melting point
No.			_	· -			
1,0.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	
142		71 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1					98°C
122							245°C
154							90°C
145							190°C
123							194°C
124							150°C
146							240°C
125							74°C
178							160°C
150							>250°C
126							90°C
127							200°C
128							210°C
157							185°C
159							140°C
151							212°C
160	73.02	72.95	6.71	6.70	20.27	20.35	
129							170°C
130							150°C
131							>250°C
152							230°C
153							169°C
131						1	120°C
161							206°C
132							160°C
133							210°C
134							81°C
162							210°C
147							>250°C
163							168°C
179							116°C
135	62.16	62.10	6.12	6.06	15.76	15.71	
164							146°C
136							188°C
165							112°C
166							114°C
149							210°C
180					<u> </u>		247°C

Comp. No.	C	3]	H	N		melting point
	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	Theor.	Exp.	
167							167°C
181							235°C
182							>250°C
184	47.75	47.58	6.01	6.37	17.72	17.00	
169							180°C
170							73°C
171							72°C
172							178°C
173				-			190°C
137				•			196°C
175							228°C
176							168°C
185							158°C

C. Pharmacological example

Example C1: In vitro screening for activity against Respiratory Syncytial Virus.

The percent protection against cytopathology caused by viruses (antiviral activity or IC_{50}) achieved by tested compounds and their cytotoxicity (CC_{50}) were both calculated from dose-response curves. The selectivity of the antiviral effect is represented by the selectivity index (SI), calculated by dividing the CC_{50} (cytotoxic dose for 50% of the cells) by the IC_{50} (antiviral activity for 50% of the cells).

10 Automated tetrazolium-based colorimetric assays were used for determination of IC₅₀ and CC₅₀ of test compounds. Flat-bottom, 96-well plastic microtiter trays were filled with 180 µl of Eagle's Basal Medium, supplemented with 5 % FCS (0% for FLU) and 20 mM Hepes buffer. Subsequently, stock solutions (7.8 x final test concentration) of compounds were added in 45 µl volumes to a series of triplicate wells so as to allow 15 simultaneous evaluation of their effects on virus- and mock-infected cells. Five fivefold dilutions were made directly in the microtiter trays using a robot system. Untreated virus controls, and HeLa cell controls were included in each test. Approximately 100 TCID₅₀ of Respiratory Syncytial Virus was added to two of the three rows in a volume of 50 µl. The same volume of medium was added to the third row to measure the 20 cytotoxicity of the compounds at the same concentrations as those used to measure the antiviral activity. After two hours of incubation, a suspension (4 x 10⁵ cells/ml) of HeLa cells was added to all wells in a volume of 50µl. The cultures were incubated at

10

37°C in a 5% CO₂ atmosphere. Seven days after infection the cytotoxicity and the antiviral activity was examined spectrophotometrically. To each well of the microtiter tray, 25 μl of a solution of MTT (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide) was added. The trays were further incubated at 37°C for 2 hours, after which the medium was removed from each cup. Solubilization of the formazan crystals was achieved by adding 100 μl 2-propanol. Complete dissolution of the formazan crystals were obtained after the trays have been placed on a plate shaker for 10 min. Finally, the absorbances were read in an eight-channel computer-controlled photometer (Multiskan MCC, Flow Laboratories) at two wavelengths (540 and 690 nm). The absorbance measured at 690 nm was automatically subtracted from the absorbance at 540 nm, so as to eliminate the effects of non-specific absorption.

Particular IC_{50} , CC_{50} and SI values are listed in Table 15 hereinbelow. Table 15

Co. No.	IC ₅₀ (μM)	CC ₅₀ (µM)	SI
42	0.0004	>10.05	>25119
31	0.0008	12.68	15849
56	0.0016	12.71	7943
145	0.00631	25.12	3981
6	0.0126	10.00	794
156	0.01259	19.95	1585
131	0.0316	19.94	631
53	0.1259	>9.95	>79
29	0.3162	10.12	32
148	1	25	25
97	1.5849	>99.85	>63

15

Claims

1. A compound of formula

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ A \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \\ A \end{bmatrix}$$
 (I)

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically

5 isomeric form thereof wherein

-a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-N=CH-CH=CH(a-1);
-N=CH-CH=CH(a-2);
-CH=N-CH=CH(a-3);
-CH=CH-N=CH(a-4); or
-CH=CH-CH=N(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di $(C_{1-4}$ alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR 5a R 5b , =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

20 Q is a radical of formula

wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula -NR²- or -CH(NR²R⁴)-;

25 X^1 is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

20

 X^2 is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, aryl C_{1-6} alkylthio, arylcarbonyl, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino and aryl;

R¹ is a bicyclic heterocycle selected from quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, pyridopyridyl, naphthiridinyl, 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, 3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, 2,3-dihydro-1,4-dioxino[2,3-b]pyridyl or a radical of formula

$$(CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_{2})_{m} \qquad (CH_{2})_{p} \qquad (CH_$$

and said bicyclic heterocycles may optionally be substituted in either of the two cycles with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxy-C₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)-amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-

CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4; each m independently is 1 or 2;

each p independently is 1 or 2;

each R^2 independently is hydrogen, formyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth

-86-

substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy; R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy; R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;

 $R^{5a},\,R^{5b},\,R^{5c}$ and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl;$ or

10 R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s-wherein s is 4 or 5;

 R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

- A compound according to claim 1 wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- is a radical of formula
 (a-1), (a-2) or (a-3).
 - 3. A compound according to claim 1 or 2 wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-5) wherein v is 2 and Y¹ is -NR²-.
- 4. A compound according to anyone of claims 1 to 3 wherein R² is C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with NHR⁶.
- A compound according to anyone of claims 1 to 4 wherein G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents selected from hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-.
- A compound according to claim 1 wherein the compound is selected from
 (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[1-(8-quinolinyl)ethyl]-1H benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4 piperidinyl]-1-(2-bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-quinolinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2 amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4 piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-

10

15

20

25

30

35

2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (\pm) -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(1-methyl-IH-benzimidazol-4yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-(ethoxy-8-quinolinylmethyl)-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7-methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-7methyl-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-IH-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1,3propanediamine trihydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(8quinolinylmethyl)-IH-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-[1-(aminomethyl)-2-methylpropyl]-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8quinolinylmethyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4piperidinyl]-3-(2-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(1isoquinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-(8quinolinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride.trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2,3-dimethyl-5-quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5quinoxalinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(3-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-1)]$

10

15

20

aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-ethoxyethoxy)-8-quinolinylmethyl]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine trihydrochloride tetrahydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-(8-quinolinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-quinoxalinyl)-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

- 7. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 6 for use as a medicine.
- 8. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as described in any one of claims 1 to 6.
- 9. A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 8, <u>characterized in that</u>, a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as described in any one of claims 1 to 6.
- 10. An intermediate of formula

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \\ a^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (IV)

with R¹, G and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, P being a protective group, and Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 but being devoided of the R² or R⁶ substituent.

11. An intermediate of formula

with R^1 , G and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $(O=)Q_3$ being a carbonyl derivative of Q, said Q being defined according to claim 1, provided that it is devoided of the NR^2R^4 or NR^2 substituent.

5 12. An intermediate of formula

$$Q \xrightarrow{N} A = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ Q \\ N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \\ a^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (XXII)

with R^1 , Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $(O=)G_2$ being a carbonyl derivative of G, said G being defined according to claim 1.

10 13. A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 1, characterized by,

a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)

with R^1 , G, Q and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and W_1 being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ &$$

15

20

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

5 c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, Q_{1a}(CH=CH) being defined as Q₁ provided that Q₁ comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group;

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

10

15

$$P = Q_{1} \cdot (OP)$$

$$Q_{1} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{2} \cdot (OP)$$

$$Q_{2} \cdot (OP)$$

$$Q_{3} \cdot (VIII)$$

$$Q_{4} \cdot a^{1} \cdot a^{2} \cdot a^{3}$$

$$Q_{2} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{3} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{4} \cdot a^{1} \cdot a^{2} \cdot a^{3}$$

$$Q_{5} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{8} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{1} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{2} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{3} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{4} \cdot a^{1} \cdot a^{2} \cdot a^{3}$$

$$Q_{5} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{8} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{1} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{2} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{3} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{4} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{5} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{7} \cdot (OH)$$

$$Q_{8} \cdot$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, H-Q₁·(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, H₂N-Q₂·(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)

NC-Q₄

$$\stackrel{R^1}{=}$$
 $\stackrel{a^1}{=}$
 $\stackrel{a^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^1}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^3}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^2}{=}$
 $\stackrel{A^3}{=}$
 20

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and H_2N - CH_2 - Q_4 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a - CH_2 - NH_2 moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)

NC-Q₄

$$R^{1}$$
 C_{1-6} alkyl-OH

reduction

 H_{2} N-CH₂
 Q_{4}
 with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, and $R^{1'}$ being defined as R^1 according to claim 1 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

10 j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, and H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄-being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia

$$C_{1-4}$$
alkyi— C_{1-4} C C_{1-4} alkyi— C_{1-4} C C_{1-4} alkyi— C_{1-4} C C_{1-4} alkyi— C_{1-4} C C_{1

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, and H-C(=O)-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is formyl;

1) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)

10

15

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} \xrightarrow{a^{1} A^{2}} A^{3} + R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} A^{2a} \xrightarrow{amination} R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH-HQ_{5}} A^{2a} \xrightarrow{A^{2} A^{2}} A^{$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and R^{2a} -NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by R^{2a} , R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-}(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-}(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$(XV)$$

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-}(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-}(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$(I-c-1)$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $(R^6)_2N$ -[$(C_{1-9}alkyl)CH_2OH$]-NH-HQ5 being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by $C_{1-10}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} A - O - H \end{pmatrix}_{w}$$

$$Q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} A - O - H \end{pmatrix}_{w}$$

$$H = Q_1 + \begin{pmatrix} A - O - H \end{pmatrix}_{w}$$

$$A - O - H \end{pmatrix}_{w$$

10

$$\begin{array}{c} P_1 - O \\ A \\ A \\ R^{1a'} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ R^{1a'} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ R^{1a'} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ R^{1a'} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ R^{1a'} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} A \\ A \end{array}$$

with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w, R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)₂ and R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)₃ being defined as R¹ according to claim 1 provided that R¹ is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)

$$C_{i^{-4}alkyl} - O - C_{-Alk} - X^{1} - N - Alk - X^{1}$$

with R^1 , G, $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ -; Alk, X^1 R^2 and R^4 defined as in claim 1, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)

$$H = C - C_{1-3} \text{alkyl} - NR^4$$

$$N = A_{1-3} \text{alkyl} - NR$$

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ defined as in claim 1, and $Q_6N-CH_2-C_{1-3}$ alkyl- NR^4

being defined as Q according to claim 1 provided that in the definition of Q, X^2 is C_{2-4} alkyl-NR⁴, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

q) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXI)

$$P = O = G_1$$

$$Q = N$$

$$A = A = A$$

$$A $

with R^1 , Q, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 1, and HO-G₁ being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy or HO-(CH₂CH₂O-)_n;

r) reducing an intermediate of formula (XXII)

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ Q = Q \\ N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$
reduction
$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ H - G_2 - OH \\ N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$
(XXII)

with R¹, Q, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 1, and H-G₂-OH being defined as G according to claim 1 provided that G is substituted with hydroxy and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy substituent carries also at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent.

and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I) into each other following artknown transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of
formula (I), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment
with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by
treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the
free base by treatment with alkali, or converting the base addition salt into the free
acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric
forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or N-oxide forms thereof.

14. A product containing (a) a compound as defined in claim 1, and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.

15. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredients (a) a compound as defined in claim 1, and (b) another antiviral compound.

=C 27 2001	3:58 PM A	FR JOHNSON≈JOHNSON	732 524	2138 TO	912150683409
------------	-----------	--------------------	---------	---------	--------------

Please type a plus sign (+) Inside this box -> + Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0551-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains valid OMB control number. JAB 1500-PCT-USA Attorney Docket Number **DECLARATION FOR UTILITY OR** Frans E. Janssens First Named Inventor DESIGN COMPLETE IF KNOWN PATENT APPLICATION Application Number (37 CFR 1.63) Filing Date Declaration ☑ Declaration OR Submitted after initial Submitted Group Art Unit Filing (surcharge (37 CFR 1.16 (e)) with Initial Examiner Name Filing required) As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that: My residence, post office address, and citizenship are as stated below next to my name. believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled: RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS the specification of which is attached hereto was filed on (MM/DD/YYY) 06/20/2000 as United States Application Number or PCT International (if applicable). Application Number PCT/EP00/05677 and was amended on (MM/DD/YYY) I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to above. acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56. I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or of any PCT international application having a filing date before that of the application on which phority is claimed Certified Copy Attached? Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY) **Priority** Prior Foreign Application Not Claim Country YES Number(s) 06/28/1999 99,202,089,1 EP Additional foreign application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data aheat PTO/SD/02B attached hereto: I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(c) lioted below. Application Number(s) Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY) Additional provisional application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet

Œ.

IJ

`~...

N

PTO/5B/01 (12-97)

PTO/SB/028 attached hereto.

[Page 1 of 4]

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Accident Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

:-1-1

ine je

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box	->	+

PTO/SB/01 (12-97) Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number

DECLARATION — Utility or Design Patent Application

						<u> </u>									
United States of United States of information white	of Americ or PCT Int ich is mat	it under 35 U.S. a, listed below a ernational applic terial to patental international filin	and, inso cation in bility as	ofar as the mai defined	the sub nner pro in 37 C	ject matte vided by t FR 1 56 v	r of e he fir:	each of the st paragra	ne cla aph c	aims of thi of 35 U.S.C	is applic C. 112, I	ation is acknov	not disclosed Medge the duty	in the prior to disclose	
U.	S. Pare	nt Applicati Numb		PCT F	Parent			arent F (MM/DI		_	Parent Patent Numbe (if applicable)				
Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on															
Additional	U.S. or P	CT international	applicat	tion nun	nbers ar	e listed or	a su	pplement	al pri	ority data	sheet P	TO/SB/	02B attached h	ereto.	
		ereby appoint th													
		nnected therewi	1L. —		er Num			•			\longrightarrow	▶ □	Place Custo	omer	
			IZI	OR									Number Bar Label he		
			X	Registe) nam	e/registra	ation	number lis	ted belo)W L			
	Name	9			Regist Num					Nam	0			stration mber	
Michael Sta				32	2,495			Myra McCormac					36,602		
Steven P. I		l l						Ellen C. Coletti					34,140		
Andrea L. ('						Mary A. Appollina				34,087			
Aliaica L. V	JOIDY			1 ~), 1 O -1			wary A. Appollina			ın ıα		01,007		
					tal	Dogistors	ol Dro	atitioner	Infor	mation obs	ot DTO	ISB/02/	C attached bar	10	
Additional i	egisteret	practitioner(s)	iameu u	ят ѕаррг	ementai	Registere	UFIC	CHIOHE	HIIO	Hation She	ELFIO	130/020	J attached here	;tO,	
Direct all corr	esponde	_	Custom or Bar (OR	X C	orresp	ondence add	ress below	
Name	Phili	p S. Johnso	on								_				
Address	John	son & John	son												
Address	One	Johnson &	Johns	son P	laza										
City	New	Brunswick						State	1	٧J	ZIP	089	8933-7003		
Country	USA			Te	lephor	_{1e} (73	32) 5) 524-2359 Fa			Fax	Fax (732) 524-2808			
believed to be punishable by	true; and fine or in	l statements mad further that the nprisonment, or tissued thereon.	ese stat both, u	ements	were m	nade with	the k	nowledge	e tha	t willful fal	se state	ements	and the like so	o made are	
Name of So	ole or F	irst Invento	r:					A petiti	ion h	as been	filed fo	r this u	ınsigned inve	ntor	
Gi	ven Nar	ne (first and m	iddle [i	f any])						Family	/ Name	or Su	rname		
Fı	rans E	duard						Jan	sse	ns .					
Inventor's Signature										30-31-			Date		
Residence: 0	City	Bonheide	Bonheiden State						Country Belgium Citizenship					Belgium	
Post Office A	Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Tu								eg 3	30					
Post Office A	ddress														
City		Beerse	State			ZIF		2340			country Belgium				
	invento	rs are being n	amed o	n the	2 su	pplemen	tal A	dditional	l Inv	entor(s) s	heet(s) PTO/	SB/02A attac	hed hereto	

PTO/SB/02A (3-97)

Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number. valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet Page <u>3</u> of <u>4</u>

Name of Addition	nal Joint Inventor, if any:			A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor								
Given Nan	me (first and middle [if any])			Family Name or Sumame								
<u>Jean Ferr</u>	nand Armand			Ļ	acram	ре						
Inventor's Signature	- Consession	#						Date	, I	olisloi		
	Le Mesnil-Esnard	V State			Country	France		Citizens	ship	France		
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1,	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003										
Post Office Address								····				
City	F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux	State			ZIP (Cedex 9	Count	ry	Franc	е		
Name of Addition	nal Joint Inventor, if any:				A petitio	on has been file	ed for t	his unsig	ned inv	entor/		
Given Na	me (first and middle [if any])	工		Family Na	ıme or	Sumame)					
<u>Jérôme</u>	Guillemont											
Inventor's Signature		些	\geq					D	ate	idishi		
Residence: City	Ande FRX	State			Country	France		Citize	enship	France		
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1,	rue C	amille	Des	smoulir —	ns, TSA 910)03					
Post Office Address												
City	F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux	State			ZIP	Cedex 9	Соц	untry	Franc	е		
Name of Addition	nal Joint Inventor, if any:	;			A petitio	on has been fil	ed for t	this unsig	ined in	ventor		
Given Na	ame (first and middle [if any])			Family Name or Sumame								
M	larc Gaston			V.	enet							
Inventor's Signature	Mu	W						D	ate	10/15/01		
Residence: City				Country France Citizenship Fran					France			
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, ru	ıe Can	nille De	smou	ulins, T	SA 91003						
Post Office Address												
City	F-92787 Issy-les- Moulineaux FR	State			ZIP	Cedex 9		Country	Fra	nce		

Burden Hour Statement. This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231

The second secon

2-00

πEC	27	2001	ರ: ೨५	\vdash M	\vdash \vdash	1044704%17	DHNSUN	ک کی م	524	∠⊥ವರ	10	912133683439	۲. و
-----	----	------	-------	------------	-------------------	------------	--------	--------	------------	------	----	--------------	------

ļuni:
ib
ij.
Ļį
ing.
Ţ
15
ian is
14

5-00

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box -> +

PTO/8B/02A (3-97)

sign (+) inside this box -> + Approved for use inrough 9/30/98. OMB 0851-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet Page 4 of 4

												
Name of Addition	al Joint Invento	or, if any:			<u> </u>	A petitio	n has been file	d for ti	nis unsign	ed inve	entor	
Given Nar	ne (first and middle	(If any))					Family Nar	ne or	Sumame			
Koenra	ad Jozef Lode	vijk Marc	el		E	Andrie	<u> </u>					
Inventor's Signature	Harl	رند						Date	G	et.12,		
Residence: City	Beerse	Beerse State Country Belgium								alp	Belgium	
Post Office Address	Janssen Pharm	Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnnoutseweg 30										
Post Office Address								,				
City	Beerse		State			ZIP	2340	Count	ny Be	lgium		
Name of Addition	nal Joint Invent	or, if any:				A petitic	n has been file	d for t	nis unsign	ed inv	entor	
Given Na	me (first and middle	e [if any])					Family Na	me or	Sumame			
Inventor's Signaturo									Da	te		
Residence: City			State			Country			Citize	ship		
Post Office Address						·						
Post Office Address		-										
City			State			ZIP	<u> </u>	Cot	intry			
Name of Addition	nal Joint Invent	or, if any:				A petitio	on has been file	d for t	this unsign	ned inv	rento <i>r</i>	
Given Na	me (first and middl	e [if any])					Family Na	me or	Sumame			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·												
inventor's Signature									Da	be		
Residence: City			State		,	Country			Citize	nship		
Poet Office Address												
Post Office Address												
City		!	State			ZIP			Country			

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the Individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Additional provisional application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

		Attorney Docket	t Number	JAB 1500-PCT-USA				
	FOR UTILITY OR SIGN	First Named Inv	entor	Frans E. Janssens				
	PPLICATION	со	MPLETE I	F KNOWN				
	R 1.63)	Application Num	ber	/				
-		Filing Date						
Declaration Submitted OR	 Declaration Submitted after Initia 	Group Art Unit						
with Initial Filing	Filing (surcharge (37 CFR 1.16 (e)) required)	Examiner Name	Examiner Name					
As a below named inven	ntor, I hereby declare that:	 						
My residence, post office	address, and citizenship are as	s stated below next to my	name.					
Application Number PC I hereby state that I have reamended by any amendment	06/20/2000	s amended on (MM/DD/YY ontents of the above identi e	YYY)					
is attached hereto OR was filed on (MM/D Application Number I hereby state that I have reamended by any amendment of the company of the co	DD/YYY) 06/20/2000 T/EP00/05677 and was eviewed and understand the cont specifically referred to above disclose information which is must be be specifically referred to above disclose information which is must be specifically referred to above disclose information application application having a filing date.	s amended on (MM/DD/YY) contents of the above identice aterial to patentability as of the above identicated at least the appropriate of the appropriate at least the appropriate of the appropriate at least the appropriate of the appropriate at least the appropriate at least the appropriate at least the appropriate and the appropriate appropriate and the appropriate appropriate and the appropriate app	(YY)	(if applicable ion, including the claims, as CFR 1 56. CFR 1 56. CFR 1 56. Contained including the claims, as contained including the claims, as contained including the claims of th				

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)

[Page 1 of 4]
Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231 DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231

Application Number(s)

FC 27 2001	3:58 PM	FR	HOSHHOL&HOSHHOL	732	524	2138	TO	912155683439
------------	---------	----	-----------------	-----	-----	------	----	--------------

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box -2 +	Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0651-0032 Palent and Tradamark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act or 1995, no persons a valid OMS control number.	are required to respond to a collection of intermation timess it contains

ى ب ج

	2 ASNO (DWE COURT NUM				_							
DEC	LAF	RATION	<u>l —</u>	- Utility	or	De	sign	Pater	nt A	(pp	licatio	<u>n</u>	
I hereby claim to United States of United States of Information which and the national	he benefit If America I PCT Into the is mate	t under 35 U.S.C , listed below at ernational applica erial to patentabi nternational filing	. 120 of nd, inso ition in t lity as o date of	any United States the subjection of the manner provide fined in 37 CF of this application	tes applic ect matte ided by t R 1 66 v	ation(r of eache he fire which	s), or 365(c sch of the c t paragraph occume ave	of any PCT plaims of this of 35 U.S.C hilable betwe	intema applies 112, l en the t	itional ag ation is i acknowl iling dat	optication designot disclosed in edge the duty le of the prior	gnating the n the prior to disclose application	
U.S	5. Pare	nt Applicatio		PCT Parent			rent Fili	-			nt Patent N		
		Manne	11			-	MIMILOU	, ,					
Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/028 attached hereto.													
Additional	U.S. or P	CT international a	applicati	ion numbers are	listed or	s suf	plemental p	priority data s	sheet Pl	0/50/0	2B aπached he	ereto.	
As a named inve and Trademark	entor. I he Office co	ereby appoint the nnected thorowith	followin	ng registered pra Customer Numb	er er	(s) to	responte th	is application	n and to	transac	Place Custo Number Bar (mor	
				<i>OR</i> Registered p <u>ra</u> c	lilioner(s)) nam	/registratio	n number list	ted bolo	" L	Jahel her		
	Name	1		Registered prac Registr	ation) [12	77 - 37 - 37 - 37 - 37 - 37 - 37 - 37 -	Name				tration nper	
Michael Sta				32,495			Myra	McCorma	ack		36,602		
Steven P. E		า		24,772			Ellen (C. Coletti			34,140		
Andrea L.		•		30,194			Mary .	A. Appoll	ina		34,087		
Additional r	aniet grad	practitioner(s) na	emed of	n aupolemental	Register	rd Pro	citioner Infe	ormation she	st PTO	30/020	atteched here	to.	
								٦					
Diract all com	caponae			er Number Code Label				OR	X C	лезро	ndence addi	esc below	
Name	Phili	p S. Johnso	n										
Address	John	son & Johns	on										
Address	One	Johnson &	Johns	son Plaza		_							
City		Brunswick					State	NJ	2IP		933-7003		
Country	USA			Telephon	e (7:	32) (524-2369	3	Fax	(73)	2) 524-280	8	
believed to be punishable by	true; and fine or in	statements mad further that the aprisonment, or issued thereon.	de hera se state both, ur	in of my own k emonts were m nder 10 U.S.C.	nowledge ade with 1001 an	aro the k d that	true and the nowledge to such willfu	at all statem nat willful fal il false state	ents ma lse state ments r	ide on l ments : may jeer	nformalion and the like so	d belief are made are lidity of the	
Name of Sc	ole or F	irst Inventor	-:]				A petition	has been	filed fo	r this u	nsigned Inve	ntor	
Gi	ven Nan	ne (first and mi	ddle [if	f anyl)				Family	. Name	or Sur	name		
	ans E						Janss						
inventor's Signature		-Haa	Sarre								Date	3001 67:18	
Residence: (City	Bormeider		State			Country	Belgiur	n		Citizenship	Belgium	
Post Office A	ddress	Janssen P	harm	aceutica N.	V., Tu	mho	utseweg	30					
Post Office A	ddrese												
City		Beerse	State		21	P	2340		Cou	intry	Belgium		

The first transfer than the first of the first transfer than the first transfer transfer than the first transfer transfe

1-0

supplemental Additional inventor(s) sheet(s) PTO/SB/02A attached hereto

Additional inventors are being named on the 2

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box ->	+

PTO/5B/02A (3-97)

Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet Page 3 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:										
Given Name (first and middle [if any])						Family Na	me or S	Sumame		
Jean Fernand Armand				L	acram	pe				
inventor's Signature					Date	Date				
Residence; City	Le Mesnil-Esnard	State			Country	France		Citizen	ship F	rance
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1	, rue (Camille	Des	moulir	ns, TSA 910	03			
Post Office Address										
City	F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineau	State			zip Cedex 9 Country		ry .	France		
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:										
Given Name (first and middle [if any])						Family Na	me or	Sumame	1	
Jérôme	érôme Emile Georges				Guillemont					
Inventor's Signature		Date								
Residence: City	Ande	State			country France Citizenship F			France		
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003									
Post Office Address	Office Address									
City	F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineau	State		ZIP Cedex 9 country F			-rance	rance		
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:										
Given Name (first and middle (if any))					Family Name or Sumame					
Marc Gaston Venet										
Inventor's Signalure								ate		
Roaldence: City		Slate		Country France				Cilizenship		France
Post Office Address	Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoutins. TSA 91003									
Post Office Address										
City	F-92787 Issy-les- Moulincaux	State			ZIP	Cedex 9		Country	Frai	nce

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual cace. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Parent and Trademark Officer, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS, SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box ->	1
, 10200 1) For a piece of (1) 1101110 11111 1	-1

PTO/SB/02A (3-97)

Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet Page 4 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any: A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor										
Given Name (first and middle [if any])					Family Name or Sumame					
Koenraad Jozef Lodewijk Marcel				,	Andries					
Inventor's Signature	Date									
Residence: City	Beerse	State			Country	Belgium		Citizens	hip	Belgium
Post Office Address	Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30									
Post Office Address	s									
City	Beerse	State			ZIP	2340	Countr	у Ве	lgiun	ì
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:										
Given Nar	Name (first and middle [if any]) Family					Family Nan	y Name or Sumame			
Inventor's Signature									Date	
Residence: City		State			Country			Citize	nship	
Post Office Address										
Post Office Address										
City		State			ZIP		Cou	ntry		
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any: A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor										
Given Name (first and middle [if any]) Family Name or Sumame										
Inventor's Signature	Date									
Residence: City		State Count			Country		Citize	Citizenship		
Post Office Address										
Post Office Address										
City		State			ZIP		c	ountry		

Burden Hour Statement This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time—you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231 DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED—FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re Application of:

Frans Eduard JANSSENS, Jean Fernand Armand LACRAMPE, Jerome Emile Georges GUILLEMONT, Marc Gaston VENET, and Koenraad Jozef Lodewijk Marcel ANDRIES

International Application No.: PCT/EP00/05677 Group Art Unit: not yet known

International Filing Date: 20 June 2000 Examiner: not yet assigned

For: RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, DC 20231

Sir:

ASSOCIATE POWER OF ATTORNEY

The undersigned, Mary A. Appollina, Registration No. 34,087, of **Johnson & Johnson**, One Johnson Plaza, New Brunswick, NJ 08933-7002, hereby appoints the following of the firm <u>WOODCOCK WASHBURN LLP</u>, <u>One Liberty Place - 46th Floor</u>, Philadelphia, <u>Pennsylvania 19103</u>, Attorney and/or Agents for Applicant(s):

Richard E. Kurtz	Registration No. 19,263	Steven B. Samuels	Registration No. 37,711
Dale M. Heist	Registration No. 28,425	Janet E. Reed	Registration No. <u>36,252</u>
John W. Caldwell	Registration No. 28,937	Jeffrey J. King	Registration No. 38,515
Gary H. Levin	Registration No. 28,734	Robert B. Washburn	Registration No. 16,574
Steven J. Rocci	Registration No. 30,489	Norman L. Norris	Registration No. 24,196
Dianne B. Elderkin	Registration No. 28,598	Albert W. Preston, Jr.	Registration No. 25,366
John P. Donohue, Jr.	Registration No. 29,916	Anthony J. Rossi	Registration No. 24,053
Henrik D. Parker	Registration No. 31,863	Terence P. Strobaugh	Registration No. 25,460
Suzanne E. Miller	Registration No. 32,279	Michael J. Swope	Registration No. 38,041
Lynn B. Morreale	Registration No. 32,842	Michael J. Bonella	Registration No. 41,628
Mark DeLuca	Registration No. 33,229	Harold H. Fullmer	Registration No. 42,560
Joseph Lucci	Registration No. 33,307	John E. McGlynn	Registration No. 42,863
Michael P. Dunnam	Registration No. 32,611	Jonathan M. Waldman	Registration No. 40,861
Michael D. Stein	Registration No. 34,734	Chad Ziegler	Registration No. 44,273
Albert J. Marcellino	Registration No. 34,664	Gwilym J.O. Attwell	Registration No. 4 <u>5,449</u>
David R. Bailey	Registration No. 35,057	David N. Farsiou	Registration No. 44,104
Doreen Yatko Trujillo	Registration No. 35,719	Paul K. Legaard	Registration No. 38,534
Barbara L. Mullin	Registration No. 38,250	Steven H. Meyer	Registration No. 37,189
Michael P. Straher	Registration No. 38,325	Paul B. Milcetic	Registration No. 46,261
Kevin M. Flannery	Registration No. 35,871	Joseph R. Condo	Registration No. 42,431
David A. Cherry	Registration No. 35,099	Michael K. Jones	Registration No. 41,100
Lynn A. Malinoski	Registration No. 38,788	Frank T. Carroll	Registration No. 42,392
-	-		

his/her associates with full power to prosecute the above-identified application and to transact all business in the Patent Office connected therewith and requests that correspondence continue to be directed to the firm of <u>WOODCOCK WASHBURN</u> LLP at the above address.

Date: December 10, 2001

Mary A. Appolina

Registration No. 34,087 Johnson & Johnson